This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

JAMES REDDEN, F. BONGO AND ASSOCIATES
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1963
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
CARLETON T. HODGE
PREFACE

Lingala is a trade language spoken along about a nine hundred mile stretch of the Congo River from Leopoldville upstream. Most of the people who speak Lingala are native speakers of other languages and use Lingala for communicating with persons outside their own language group.

The Lingala Basic Course is one of a series prepared by the Foreign Service Institute in its Special African Languages Program, coordinated by Earl W. Stevick. This series is being produced under an agreement with the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, under the National Defense Education Act.

The course in its present form is based on classroom experience with a group of Foreign Service Officers. It is designed to provide basic structures and vocabulary for the situations in which the foreigner is most likely to need Lingala.

The linguist in charge of the project has been James E. Redden. He was assisted by Frederic Bongo, Ernest Masakala, and Emil Zola, Language Instructors.

The tapes which accompany the text were prepared in the Foreign Service Institute Language Laboratory under the supervision of Gabriel Cordova.

Howard E. Sollenberger, Dean
School of Language and Area Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Contents ..................................................................... iv

**Introduction**

Identification and location ........................................ x

Tone ...................................................................... xi

Symbol list ................................................................. xiii

**Unit 1**

Dialogue: 'Greetings' .................................................. 1

**Note:**

1. Verb prefixes ......................................................... 2
2. Particle /ná/, 'and', 'together with' .......................... 3
3. Particle /ná/ after /-zala/ ......................................... 3
4. Particle /ná/ and /ya/ Possession ......................... 3
5. Particles /ná/ and /ya/ Description .................... 4
6. Response to yes-no questions ............................... 4
7. Intonation: Statement vs. Question ..................... 5
8. Nouns: Singular and Plural ................................. 6
9. /o/ before another vowel ...................................... 7
10. Drills: Instructions on How to Use ..................... 7

**Unit 2**

Dialogue: 'Do you speak Lingala?' ............................. 10

**Note:**

1. Negation: /te/ ..................................................... 11
2. Verb: Base and prefixes ....................................... 12
3. Aspect: Perfective/Imperfective ......................... 12
4. Tense: Time Segments ........................................ 12
5. Immediate Past: Permanent States: Present Locations ......................................................... 14
6. Habitual Action: Continued State ..................... 15
7. Temporary Habitual Present: Proximate Future ................................................................. 16
8. Spelling of long or double identical vowels 16
| Unit 3 | Dialogue: 'Do you want to come to my house today?' | 21 |
| Note: | 1. Infinitive prefix: /ko-/ | 23 |
| | 2. Purpose: Immediate Future | 24 |
| | 3. Immediate Present | 24 |
| | 4. Potential Future | 25 |
| | 5. Imperative | 25 |
| | 6. Spelling of long identical vowels | 25 |
| | 7. Possessive Construction with Infinitive | 30 |
| | 8. Immediate Past of /-lia/ | 30 |
| | 9. Order of Possessive and Descriptive Phrases | 30 |

| Unit 4 | Dialogue: 'The Rapids' | 31 |
| Note: | 1. Noun Classes | 33 |
| | 2. Verb Subject Prefixes | 35 |
| | 3. Nasal Homorganic with following Consonant | 36 |
| | 4. Adjectives | 43 |
| | 5. Prominence of Initial Sentence Position | 44 |

<p>| Unit 5 | Dialogue: 'On the Way to Work' | 45 |
| Note: | 1. Nouns of deed or action, type 1 | 48 |
| | 2. Independent or Emphatic Subject Pronouns | 48 |
| | 3. Very Polite Questions and Requests | 49 |
| | 4. Vowel Harmony in Noun Prefixes | 49 |
| | 5. Recent Past: Recent Past Progressive | 49 |
| | 6. Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals | 50 |
| | 7. Telephone Numbers | 50 |
| | 8. Plural of /mokama/ 'hundred' | 50 |
| | 9. 'Passive' Plural | 55 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Dialogue:</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>'At the Office'</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>1. Equational Sentences</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Non-animate Independent Pronouns</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Subjunctive</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Applicative Suffix</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Indirect Discourse: Particle /te/</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>'At the Market'</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>1. Desiderative</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Nominalization of Adjectives</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Interrogative Relative Pronouns</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Potential Juncture Before Relative Clauses</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. /-tikala/ Plus Object</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. Please</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>'At the Filling Station'</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>1. Vowel and Semi-vowel Elision</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Reversive</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Reversive Stative</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Derived Stems Without Simple Stems</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Causative</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. Degree of Immediate Past</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. Proverb Concordance</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. Non-applicative Verbs With Two Objects</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9. Functionally-specialized Use of Imperative</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>'The Houseboy'</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>1. Comparison of Intensity</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Definite Condition</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. General Prohibitions .................................................. 91
4. Special Meanings of Derived Stems ................................. 92
5. /tê/ Followed by /na/ ................................................. 92
6. /libosô/ Plus Subjunctive ........................................... 97

Unit 10
Dialogue: 'The Telephone' .............................................. 98
Note: 1. Hypothetical Supposition ................................... 106
2. 'Passive' Plural ....................................................... 106
3. Future in Non-initial and Subordinate Clauses ................. 106

Unit 11
Dialogue: 'At the Doctor's' ............................................ 107
Note: 1. Emphatic /wâpi/ ................................................. 111
2. Spelling of /ôô/ ..................................................... 111

Unit 12
Dialogue: 'Mosquitoes' .................................................. 117
Note: 1. Nouns From Derived Stems ................................ 121
2. Agent Nouns .......................................................... 122
3. /wa/; /ya/ .............................................................. 122
4. Literary Use of /ndê/ of Mark Future ......................... 122
5. Hyperbole with /...mayêle tê/ ................................. 122
6. Norms of Deed or Action, Type 2 ............................... 122

Unit 13
Dialogue: 'The Workshop' .............................................. 130
Note: 1. Passive .......................................................... 134
2. Ingressive Stative: Reciprocal ................................ 135
3. /mikolo mikomi mosika/ ........................................ 135
4. Instrument Nouns, Type 1 ....................................... 136
5. Locative Nouns, Type 1 .......................................... 136
6. Avoidance of Base Repetition ................................. 136
7. Instrument Nouns, Type 2 ....................................... 136
8. Instrument Nouns, Type 3 ....................................... 138
9. Expletive .............................................................. 138
## Unit 14

**Dialogue:** 'Elections' ............................................. 143

**Note:**
1. Miscellaneous Nouns ........................................... 146
2. /se/ .............................................................. 147
3. Ambiguity of Agent and Indirect Object ............. 152
4. Lovanium University ........................................... 153
5. Leopoldville II .................................................. 153

## Unit 15

**Dialogue:** 'Military Service' ........................................ 154

**Note:**
1. Intermediate Past ............................................... 157
2. Distant Past ...................................................... 157
3. Comparison of Intensity ....................................... 158
4. Comparison of Degree ......................................... 158
5. Inversion of Subject and Verb ........................... 158

## Unit 16

**Dialogue:** 'Building a Road' ......................................... 164

**Note:**
1. Subject With Two Verbs ....................................... 169
2. Immediate Past of /-longwa/ ............................... 169
3. Indefinite Condition ........................................ 169

## Unit 17

**Dialogue:** 'Traffic Control' ........................................ 175

## Unit 18

**Dialogue:** 'A New House' ............................................ 184

**Note:**
1. /-zala ya/ ....................................................... 188
2. Equational Sentence with Emphatic Subject .... 189

## Unit 19

**Dialogue:** 'Leaving For The Store' ............................. 195

**Note:**
1. Reflexive ......................................................... 199
2. Compound Agent Nouns ....................................... 203
3. Kinship Terminology ........................................ 204
Unit 20
Dialogue: 'A Student Visa' .............................. 205
Note: 1. /ifo/ plus Subjunctive .......................... 208
2. Reduplication for Intensity .......................... 208
3. Wishes, Intentions, Plans .......................... 208

Unit 21
Dialogue: 'A Lost Pencil' .............................. 214
Note: 1. Double Spatial Relationships ................. 217
2. Partitive ........................................... 218

Unit 22
Dialogue: 'The Bus to Kimwenza' ....................... 223
Note: 1. /longwá áwa tií na Kimwenza/ ............... 226
2. /nsíma ya mikołó mísdítu/ ........................ 226

Unit 23
Dialogue: 'A Wedding' ................................ 232
Note: 1. Suggestive Cohortative ........................ 236
2. Distant Indefinite Future .......................... 241

Unit 24
Dialogue: 'The Seasons' ............................... 242

Glossary .................................................. 252
Introduction

Lingala is a lingua franca or trade language spoken in the areas on both sides of the Congo River from Leopoldville up to about a hundred miles from Stanleyville. Lingala, usually called Mangala by Africans, was originally the language of the Bamangala, a Bantu tribe that has almost completely disappeared. Most speakers of Lingala are native speakers of another language and use Lingala as a means of communicating with other tribal groups and to a lesser extent with Europeans; however, there is a growing number of younger people, especially in urban centers such as Leopoldville, whose native language is Lingala. Since Lingala is spoken by so many people of varied linguistic backgrounds, it is inevitable that the language as spoken in different areas should vary to a greater or lesser degree.

The speaker on whose speech these materials are based is from Leopoldville, a child of parents who could not speak each other's language and who consequently always spoke Lingala with each other and with their children. Lingala has been a written language for quite some time, but unfortunately written or 'literary' Lingala is different in many ways from Lingala as it is nearly always spoken by Africans. One can say without hesitation that literary Lingala is an invention of Europeans who have tried to 'improve' on the language, because Africans who speak Lingala fluently have trouble understanding literary Lingala even when it is spoken. This manual is based strictly on Lingala as spoken by the person described above.

The transcription system used in this manual is the orthography regularly used to write Lingala plus diacritic markings to indicate tone, which is not usually written, and to make it clear how a word or segment is pronounced in cases where the student may have difficulty interpreting the orthography. Some words have been respelled, but this is indicated in the footnotes the first time the respelling occurs.
Lingala contains many words borrowed both from African and European languages. It is often difficult, if not impossible, to recognize words borrowed from other Bantu languages. Since most of the people who speak Lingala are native speakers of some other language, words from other languages are constantly used in Lingala. A number of Arabic words have come in via Swahili. Portuguese and French words have been borrowed for several centuries, and many such words have been so fully assimilated into the sound system that they too are very hard to recognize. A number of English words also have entered. French words are freely used in everyday speech in a more or less unassimilated form. Those persons who speak French fluently also try to pronounce French words as they would be in French when these words are used in Lingala. Assimilated words occurring in this text are spelled as pronounced in Lingala, and the first time they occur, the standard French spelling is given in parentheses, e.g., /letá/ (l'état), 'government'. Words recently borrowed and not assimilated into the Lingala sound system are given the standard French spelling in the Lingala text. Unassimilated French words usually have a high tone on the final syllable. The diacritic marks on French words are NOT tone marks, but they are the same as those regularly used in French spelling.

Lingala, like almost all the languages spoken south of the Sahara, is a tone language. Each syllable has its own tone. Tone is as much an integral part of a syllable as vowels and consonants. Words are distinguished by tone, e.g., /ngá/, 'I', 'me' (a low and two highs), and /ngal/, 'scur(ness)', 'bitter(ness)' (three lows). Lingala has two contrastive or phonemic tones: high /\)/, low /\ (unmarked). However, there are many speakers of Lingala who use a stress system instead of tones. Most speakers who use a stress system stress the penultimate syllable. Because of these speakers and because tone has a smaller phonemic yield, i.e., plays a smaller role, in Lingala than in the great majority of African languages, one can obviously communicate in Lingala without using its tone system. But the majority of speakers of the
language do use tone, including the speaker used as the model for this manual.

Sentence intonation, e.g., use of pitch to distinguish statements and questions, is also used in Lingala. This is described in Note 1.7. In reference to the notes in this manual, the first numeral refers to the unit and the second numeral refers to the note.

In the four column chart given below, column I gives the orthography except for /ə/ and /ɔ/ (See footnote 3 below), column II gives the phonemes, column III gives the phonetic symbols, and column IV is an approximation of the sound using American English and French sounds for comparison.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Phoneme</th>
<th>Phonetics</th>
<th>Approximation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>/p/</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>tin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kp⁴⁻</td>
<td>/kp/</td>
<td>[kp, 'kp']</td>
<td>simultaneous k and p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>/b/</td>
<td>[b]</td>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>[d]</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>/g/</td>
<td>[g]</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gb⁴⁻</td>
<td>/gb/</td>
<td>[gb, 'gb']</td>
<td>simultaneous g and b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>/f/</td>
<td>[f]</td>
<td>fee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>[s]</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>/h/</td>
<td>[h]</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>/z/</td>
<td>[ʐ, ɻ, ʐ̠, ɻ̠]</td>
<td>zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>/m/</td>
<td>[m]</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>[n, ŋ]</td>
<td>no, sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ny</td>
<td>/ɲ/</td>
<td>[ɲ ɻ̠]</td>
<td>ye pronounced through the nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngb⁴⁻</td>
<td>/ŋ/</td>
<td>[ŋ]</td>
<td>simultaneous m and ŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>[l]</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>/w/</td>
<td>[w]</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xii
A number of special symbols are also used as explained below.
( ) Enclosed Lingala elements are usually elided at conversation speed; or enclosed English elements are given for clarity of meaning.

/ / In the chart above, this symbol means Lingala phonemics; elsewhere, it means the symbolization used in this grammar.

// Ordinary Lingala orthography. Spaces between words to mark word boundaries are the same as those used in the orthography except as given in the footnotes.
NOTES

1. /v/ and /r/ are used only in unassimilated loan words.
2. There is no y- or w-offglide with Lingala vowels in contrast to English vowels which sound somewhat the same.
3. /e/ is usually /ε/, but sometimes /ε/, /o/ is usually /o/, but sometimes /ɔ/.
4. /kp/, /gb/, and /ngb/ are very rare. This manual contains only one word with /gb/ and no words with /kp/ or /ngb/.
   They are usually explosive, but some speakers are reported to use implosives.
Unit 1

Basic Sentences

-A-

mbọtè greetings, good morning/
  afternoon/evening


-B-

eye yes

2. Êë, mbọtè. Hello.

-A-

-zala to be, exist, live, sit,
  dwell

ozali you (sg.) are

malamù good, well, fine

3. Ozali malamù? How are you?

-B-

nazali I am

ná and, with, as well as, even

yò, yò you (sg.)

4. Êë, nazali malamù. Nà yò? I'm fine. And you?
5. Éq, nazalí malámú. I'm fine.

mama, ba-

mwana, bána

na and, with; of, having; consisting of; at, along, by

6. Mamá na bána azalí malámú? How is your wife?

7. Éq, azalí malámu. She's fine.

mpé and, also, likewise

8. Ná bána mpé? And the children?

bangó they, them, those

bánsó all

9. Éq, bangó bánsó bazalí malámú. They are all fine.

NOTES

1.1. Verb prefixes.

Verbs have one of several prefixes to mark: (1) person (first, second, third), (2) number (singular, plural), and (3) other grammatical categories which will be discussed later. Note the underlined prefixes in the chart below.
1.2. Particle /ná/, 'and', 'together with'

At conversation speed /ná/ is usually /na/, i.e., low-toned, but for emphasis or if there is ambiguity, it is /ná/, i.e., high-toned, and is stressed, i.e., louder than adjacent syllables, e.g., /azalí ná mwána/, 'he is with the child', or /tató ná mamá ná bána/, 'the father and also the mother and the children as well'. In a question /ná/ is always high.

1.3. Particle /na/ after /-zala/

The verb /-zala/ plus /na/ has a number of meanings from the English point of view. Most commonly /-zala na/ translates 'has' or 'have', e.g., /azalí na mwána/, 'he has a child', but a number of other meanings are possible, e.g., 'he is with the child', 'he is looking after the child'.

1.4. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Possession

One of the uses of the particles /na/ and /ya/ is to mark possession. The noun preceding the particle is the possessed, and the noun or pronoun following the particle is the possessor. If the possessor is a noun, /ya/ occurs, e.g., /mwána ya mobálí/, 'the child of the man/male/husband'. If the possessor is a pronoun, /na/ usually occurs, e.g., /mwána na ngaí/, 'my child', 'child of me'. /ya/ does occur occasionally before pronouns in possessive
constructions. If the possessor is a pronoun, the independent form of the pronoun occurs. See the chart below.

INDEPENDENT PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>ngáí</td>
<td></td>
<td>bisú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>yó, yóó</td>
<td></td>
<td>binú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>yé, yeé</td>
<td></td>
<td>bangó</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.5. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Description

In general if /na/ occurs between two nouns, it is understood as 'and', 'in addition'; but there are a few specialized constructions like /mamá na bána/, 'woman with children, 'wife', 'lady'. This construction is used as a polite term of address if it is known to the speaker that the woman being addressed has children. Or it is used as a polite term of reference to the wife of the man being addressed. If it is not known to the speaker whether the couple has children, one would use /mwási na yó/, 'your woman/wife/female', as a term of reference and /mamá/ 'mother/lady/madam', as a term of address. Both terms are polite, but /mamá na bána/ and /mamá/ establish greater rapport if used. Likewise /tatá na bána/, 'husband/man/gentleman', and /tatá/, 'father/gentleman/sir', occur in this type situation when referring to a man.

In general if /ya/ occurs between two nouns, it is understood as, 'of', 'belonging to'; but it may also indicate description or quality, e.g. /mwána ya mobáli/, 'boy', 'male child', 'son'. Compare note 1.4.

1.6. Response to yes-no questions.

In answering a yes-no question, it is necessary to say /éè/, 'yes', or /té/, 'no', even though the question is answered with a
sentence, e.g., /Ozali malámu?, 'Are you well?', is answered by /iíë, nazali malámu., 'Yes, I am well.'

1.7. Intonation: Statement vs. Question

Statements and questions are distinguished by intonation, i.e., they have different pitch patterns or sentence melodies. In general, the pitch level of a sentence becomes gradually lower. The interval or amount of pitch difference between high and low is greater in a question than in a statement, especially between the last high and the lows in the preceding syllable and in the following syllable, but in a long sentence the interval between high and low is no greater in the first several syllables than the interval in a statement.

INTONATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He likes meat.</td>
<td>Does he like meat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alíngí nyama.</td>
<td>Alíngí nyama?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

---
Though the pitch does fall over a sentence, the second of two low tones is slightly higher if followed by a high tone. The last syllable of a statement is conspicuously lower in pitch and usually in amplitude, but at the end of a question only a low tone is lower. A final high in a statement is usually just a little lower than a preceding low. A final high in a question is much higher than a preceding low; a final high after a high is approximately on the same level as or a little higher than the preceding high. A final high in a question may be either level or high-rising.

INTONATION

Statement | Question
---|---
He likes manioc leaves. | Does he like manioc leaves?
Alingi mpɔndu. | Alining mpɔndu?

1.8. Nouns: Singular and Plural

Nouns are marked for singular and plural by prefixes. Most nouns referring to persons have /mo-/ in the singular and /ba-/ in the plural, e.g., /mótu/, 'person', 'human', and /bátu/, 'people'. Kinship terms usually have no prefix in the singular, e.g., /tató/, 'father', but do have /ba-/ in the plural, as in /batató/, 'fathers'. The plural prefix is listed after a noun the first time the noun
occurs. If the plural is irregular, the entire plural form is given, e.g., /mwána/, 'child', /bána/, 'children'. Irregular plurals are marked with the symbol ° to distinguish them from alternate forms of the singular. The plural should be learned along with the vocabulary item. The plural of some (especially abstract) nouns rarely occurs. Rare plurals are given in parentheses, e.g., /bolái, (ma-)/, 'length', 'depth', 'height'. Also some nouns occur only in the plural.

1.9. /o/ before another vowel.

/0/ before another vowel is regularly /w/, e.g., /moána/, is /mwána/, 'child'.

1.10. Drills: Instructions on How to Use

In doing the drills, the teacher is to give the student the first sentence. After having the student repeat the first sentence, give him the underlined portion of the next sentence and have the student give back the new sentence composed of the underlined portion plus the required parts of the preceding sentence. See model below.

MODEL DRILL

Teacher: Nazalí malámu.
Student: Nazalí malámu.
Teacher: Ozalí
Student: Ozalí malámu.

LEXICAL DRILL 1

1. Nazalí malámu. I am fine.
2. Ozalí malámu. You (sg.) are fine.
UNIT 1  
LINGALA

3. Azalí malámu.  
4. Tozalí malámu.  
5. Bozalí malámu.  
He/she is fine.  
We are fine.  
You (pl.) are fine.  
They are fine.

LEXICAL DRILL 2

1. Azalí malámu?  
2. Mwána na yó azalí malámu?  
3. Mwásí na yó azalí malámu?  
4. Mobálí na yó azalí malámu?  
5. Tatá na bínú azalí malámu?  
6. Mamá na bangó azalí malámu?  
7. Bána na yó bazalí malámu?  
8. Bamamá na bísu bazalí malámu?  
9. Bangó bánso bazalí malámu?  
10. Mamá na bána azalí malámu.  
How is he?  
How is your child?  
How is his wife?  
How is her husband?  
How is your father?  
How is their mother?  
How are your children?  
How are our mothers?  
Are they all all right?  
How is your wife?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

Answer affirmatively:

1. Ozalí malámu?  
2. Azalí malámu?  
3. Bozalí malámu?  
4. Bazalí malámu?  
5. Bána na yó bazalí malámu?  
6. Tatá na yó azalí malámu?  
É, nazalí malámu.  
É, azalí malámu.  
É, tozalí malámu.  
É, bazalí malámu.  
É, bána na ngái bazalí malámu.  
É, tatá na ngái azalí malámu.
7. Mamá na bangó azalí malámu?  Èe, mamá na bangó azalí malámu.
8. Mwána na yé azalí malámu? Èe, mwána na yé azalí malámu.
10. Mwásí na yó azalí malámu? Èe, mwásí na ngái azalí malámu.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Azalí mwána. He is young.
2. Nazalí na mwána. I have a child.
3. Nazalí na bána. I have children.
4. Bazalí na bána. They are with the children.
5. Bazalí ná mamá na ngái. They are with my mother.
6. Tozalí na mamá na ngái. We are with my mother.
7. Tozalí na mwána na yó. We are taking care or your child.
8. Mamá azalí na mwána na yó. Mother has your child.
9. Mama azalí na bangó bánsô. Mother has all of them.
10. Bozalí na bangó bánsô. You have all of them.
UNIT 2

Basic Sentences

-A-

-loba

to speak, tell, say

1. Olobaka Lingala?  
   Do you speak Lingala?

-B-

-yeba

to know, be acquainted with;
may, be allowed to

naínu

still, yet

té

not, no

2. Nayébi naínu malámu té.  I don't know it very well yet.

-A-

Français  
French

3. Olobaka Français mpé?  
   Do you speak French too?

-B-

kásí

but

Anglais  
English

4. Ése, kásí nayébi Anglais té.  Yes, but I don't speak English.

-A-

ndínga, n-

language

níni

what, which

ndáko, n-

ndáko?

house

5. Olobaka ndínga níni na  
   What language do you speak at
   ndáko?

   home?
BASIC COURSE

UNIT 2

-B-

letá (l'État) government, state

Kitúba, Kikongo ya the Kituba language

Letá, KutuBA

6. Tolobaka Lingála ná Kitúba. We speak Lingala and Kituba.

-A-

-yékola to study, learn

7. Naákoyékola Lingála. I'm studying Lingala.

-B-


NOTES

2.1 Negation: /tê/

The negative particle /tê/ follows whatever it modifies. If it modifies a sentence, it occurs at the end of the sentence, e.g., /nayébi Angláis tê/, 'I don't speak English.'

2.2 Verb: Base and Affixes

olobaka

nayébi

These may be diagrammed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Prefix</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Verbal Base</th>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Aspect Suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o-</td>
<td>lob</td>
<td>-ak</td>
<td></td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na-</td>
<td>yéb</td>
<td></td>
<td>-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11
The base and aspect suffix occur in every verb form. Prefixes and verbal extensions may or may not be present. The tone of the first stem syllable is fixed, i.e., always high or always low; but the tone of succeeding syllables of the stem is the same as the tone of the aspect suffix.

2.3 Aspect: Perfective/Imperfective

There are two aspect suffixes: the perfective and imperfective. The tone of the aspect suffix is high in the past and imperative, but low in the non-past and infinitive.

The perfective suffix /-i/ marks a form regarded by the speaker as indicating a completed action or state arrived at by the time referred to in the sentence. Since /-i/ is always a past, it always has high tone.

The imperfective suffix /-a/ marks a form regarded by the speaker as indicating an action or state continued through an indefinite period of time. Since the imperfective /-a/ occurs with the past, present, and future, it has high or low tone as described above.

2.4 Tense: Time Segments

In addition to dividing time into past, present, and future, Lingala segments time in a series of steps from the present. The borderline between the various degrees of distance from the present is relative, i.e., cannot be stated exactly in hours or days. The various tenses will be studied in the following lessons. Compare the English approximations of Lingala time divisions in the diagram below.
I - W

PRESENT (Now)

DISTANT PAST
(A Long Time Ago)

INTERMEDIATE PAST
(Some Time Ago)

RECENT PAST (Recently)

IMMEDIATE PAST (Just)

IMMEDIATE FUTURE (About To)

PROXIMATE FUTURE
(Soon)

POTENTIAL FUTURE
(Plan To)
2.5 Immediate Past: Permanent States: Present Locations

The perfective suffix /-i/ marks (1) the immediate past, (2) permanent or semi-permanent states and innate characteristics, and (3) permanent or present locations. (1) The immediate past most often refers to some time earlier the same day as the moment of speaking or some time the preceding day, but it may refer to any time in the last three or four or more days if the speaker considers the event to have just taken place. (2) Permanent or semi-permanent states and innate characteristics are such things as sex, nationality, name, profession, and marital state. (3) A permanent location, is a geographic or natural location; a present location is the present temporary location of anything movable. Compare the examples below.

1. nazalí

I have been, have become, have reached the state of, have been created as, i.e., I am, am in the act or state of, am by nature.

Nazalí mobáli. I am a man.
Nazalí áwa. I am here.
Nazalí koloba. I am speaking.

2. nayébi

I have become acquainted with, i.e., I know.

Nayébi Lingála. I speak Lingala.
Nayébi yé. I know him.
3. nasálí
   I have done, I did, have just done, recently did.
   Nasálí yangó. I made it.
   Nasálí mosálá. I did the work.

2.6 Habitual Action: Continued State

The combination of the verbal extension /-ak-/ and the imperfective suffix marks the habitual present, which indicates a regular activity or usual part of the subject's behavior over a long, indefinite period, including the present. Compare the examples below.

1. nazalaka
   I am regularly, always, habitually
   Nazalaka na ndáko. I'm always home.
   Nazalaka ná ye. I'm always with him.

2. nalobaka
   I regularly speak.
   Nalobaka Lingála. I(always) speak Lingala, i.e., Lingala is a habitual activity of mine.

3. nasálaka
   I regularly do.
   Nasálaka bilámba. I (habitually) make clothes, i.e., I am a tailor.

2.7. Temporary Habitual Present: Proximate Future

A long or double subject-pronoun vowel with a high tone on the second element plus (or minus) a /ko-/ prefix to the verb stem, which
in turn has the imperfective suffix, marks (1) the temporary habitual present and/or (2) the proximate future. The /ko-/ prefix is optional, but it nearly always occurs. (1) A temporary habitual present indicates an activity which is a regular part of the subject's behavior for a rather short temporary period including the present; (2) a proximate future is something that will take place soon, e.g., /Na'koyékola Lingála/, 'I'm studying Lingala', 'At the present time, one of my regular activities is studying Lingala', or 'I'm going to be studying Lingala in the near future'.

2.8 Spelling of long or double identical vowels.

The Lingala orthography does not usually indicate long or double vowels of the same quality, e.g., /na'koyékola/ is usually /nąkoyékola/. But since this spelling is the same as that of the potential future (See Note 3.2), sometimes an acute accent is added to the vowel of the subject pronoun, e.g., /na'koyékola/ is sometimes /nąkoyékola/. Those cases when the regular orthography writes a long vowel will be indicated in the notes.

2.9 Vowel Harmony

There are certain limitation as to which vowels can precede or follow other vowels. These limitations are called vowel harmony. There are two series of vowels: primary and secondary.

primary vowels      ı e a o u
secondary vowels    ę q (a)

/a/ is often a secondary vowel in verbal extensions and in the imperfective suffix, but /a/ is almost always primary in a base. The relationship of these two series is perhaps easier to see in a vowel triangle.
Vowel Harmony Rules

I. If the first syllable of a stem contains a primary vowel, all succeeding mid vowels will be primary, i.e., high mid, e.g., /naáyškola/, 'I'm studying.'

II. If the first syllable of a stem contains a secondary vowel, all succeeding mid vowels will be secondary, i.e., low mid, unless a high vowel occurs after the secondary vowel, in which case succeeding mid vowels will be primary, e.g., /natékél/, 'I sold for (someone)', but /nabongisél/, 'I repaired for (someone)'.

III. When a secondary vowel occurs in a syllable before /a/ in either habitual extension /-ak-/ or the imperfective suffix /-a/, the same secondary vowel as in the preceding syllable also usually occurs in the extension and the imperfective suffix, e.g., /naken-đeke/, 'I go', is the more common form, but /nakendaka/, 'I go', is also fairly common. If both the habitual extension and the imperfective suffix occur, both the extension and the suffix have the same vowel, i.e., /nakenđeka/ does not occur.

IV. A low mid vowel immediately followed by a high vowel is often replaced by a high mid vowel, e.g., /omóni/, 'I see' is the more common form, but /omóni/, 'I see' is fairly common.

In bases ending in a vowel, a form with two primary vowels occurs, e.g., /nakei/, 'I went', not /nake/. If /a/ occurs in
this environment, it acts as a secondary vowel, e.g., /nayˈɛi/, 'I came', not */nayáˈi/.

V. Verb prefixes are not influenced by vowel harmony.

VI. Some noun prefixes are subject to vowel harmony influence of the first syllable of the base in the same ways as described above for vowels following the initial base syllable. This will be further studied in Note 4.3.

2.10 The Kituba Language

Kituba is a lingua franca spoken to the west and south of Lingala. Many speakers of Lingala also know Kituba, and conversely. Lingala and Kituba share many words and grammatical structures. Kituba is also called Kikongo ya Letá; but sometimes Kituba is restricted to mean that dialect of the language spoken in the eastern or Kwango-Kwilu region, and Kikongo ya Letá restricted to mean that of the western or lower Congo region.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL I

-yóka to hear, listen, feel understand
moké, m₁- small, thin; a little; a bit, few

1. Olobaka Lingála? Do you speak Lingala?
2. Olobaka Français mpé? Do you speak French too?
5. Bayébi Lingála moké. They speak a little Lingala.
6. Bayébi malámu té. They don't speak it very well.
7. Toyóki yó malámu té. We didn't understand you very well.
8. Toyóki yó moké. We understood you partly.
10. Boyébi malámu. You (pl.) know it very well.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nazalí na ndáko ya ngáí. I'm at home.
2. Nazalí na ndáko ya bangó. I'm at their house.
3. Azalí mwána ya bangó. He is their child.
4. Azalí mwána malámu. He's a good child.
5. Toyébi Lingála malámu. We speak Lingala well.
6. Toyébi Lingála moké. We speak a little Lingala.
7. Ozalí mwána moké. You are a small child.
8. Ozalí mwána ya mamá ya ngáí. You are a child of my mother.
9. Azalí tatá ya mamá ya ngáí. He is my mother's father.
10. Azalí tatá ya ngáí. He is my father.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Naákoyékola Lingála. I'm studying Lingala.
2. Naákoyékola ndinga na bínú. I'm learning your language.
3. Nayébi ndinga na bínú. I know your language.
4. Nayébi Anglais té. I don't speak English.
5. Ayébi Anglais té. He doesn't know English.
6. Ayébi yó. He knows you.
7. Bayóki yó. They hear you.
8. Bayóki malámú. They feel fine. (i.e., They have recovered.)

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Nayébi yé malámú té. I don't know him very well.
2. Nayébi mwána na yé ya mobál. I know his son.
3. Azálí mwána na yé ya mobál. He is her son.
4. Azálí na ndáko na ngái. He is at my house.
5. Tolobaka Kitúba na ndáko na ngái. We speak Kituba at my house.
6. Tolobaka Kitúba ná Fráncáis mpé. We speak Kituba and French also.
7. Bayóbi Kitúba ná Fráncáis mpé. They know Kituba and French also.
8. Bayóbi naínú malámú té. They don't know (how) very well.
10. Azálí mwána moké. He is a small child.
Unit 3

Basic Sentences

-A-

-linga

to want, like; be almost
on the point of

-yáá

to come, become

léló

today

1. Oliningí koyáá léló na
ndako na ngai?

Do you want to come to my house
today?

-B-

sökó, sökí

if

-zwá

to get, receive, find, meet
time, hour, clock, sun

ntangú, ntangó

2. Sökó nazwí ntángu nakoyáa.

If I get time, I will come. If
nothing prevents me, I'll come.

-A-

-lía

to eat

3. Oliningí kolía níni?

What do you like to eat?

-B-

nsósó

chicken

lósó

rice


Chicken and rice.

-A-

5. Ná níni?

And what else?
-B-

mbísl           fish
mpøndú          manioc leaves (used as a vegetable)
nyama           meat

6. Mbísl, mpondu na nyama. Fish, manioc leaves with meat.

-A-

-lamba          to cook, prepare food


-melo           to drink, suck up, smoke

8. Oměla níní? What would you like to drink?

-B-

vínu            wine
masanga         wine, beer
mbíla           palm tree, palm nuts


-A-

-koka           to be able, can, be sufficient, be more than a given number

-yáa ná          to bring, come with

10. Okoki koyáa ná mwásí na yó té? Can't you bring your wife?

-B-

míbalé         two

11. Tokoyáa bíslú míbalé. We'll both come.


14. Pésá mamá na bána mbóté. Say hello to your wife for me.

15. Pésá mpé bána mbóté. And remember me to your children.


NOTES

3.1 Infinitive prefix: /ko-/  
Verbal nouns, here called infinitives, are marked by the prefix /ko-/ added to the imperfective verb stem, e.g., /kosála/, 'to do', 'doing'. This prefix may be added to any imperfective verb stem, so that, for example, there is also a form /kosálaka/, 'to do habitually'. Infinitives are invariable and, like other nouns, may be subjects of verbs, e.g., /kosála ezalí malámu/, 'It's good to work', 'Work is a good thing'. (The verb prefix /e-/ is described in Note 4.2.)

Infinitives often occur after a main verb much like a complementary infinitive in English, and the meaning of such a construction is usually obvious, e.g., /okói koyá/, 'you are able to come'. But sometimes the meaning is difficult for a speaker of English to guess. In such cases a footnote is given.

A verb of motion plus an infinitive indicates purpose, e.g., /ayéi kolíá/, 'he has come to eat', 'he has come in order to eat'.

23
3.2 Purpose: Immediate Future.

/-linga/ followed by an infinitive expresses (1) purpose and/or (2) immediate future. (1) Purpose is a desire or a want; (2) the immediate future is something about to happen, e.g., /olingi koyaa/, 'you want to come,' or 'you are about to come', 'you will come very soon'. Compare also /balingi koloba Lingala/, 'They want to speak Lingala', or 'They will (soon be able to) speak Lingala, (but they can't speak it now)', 'They have nearly reached the state of being able to speak Lingala'. Sometimes 'almost ready to' is a good translation.

3.3 Immediate Present

/-zali/ plus an infinitive marks the immediate present, i.e., something taking place at the moment of speaking, e.g., /nazali kolia/, 'I am eating', 'I am in the act/process/state of eating at this moment'.

Though the temporary habitual present (See Note 2.8) and the immediate present both usually translate 'I am... ing' and though both may often be used to describe the same event, they often contrast, e.g., /naakolia/, 'I'm eating', i.e., 'I'm studying (or whatever) but from time to time I eat something even though at this moment I may not have food in my mouth', /nazali kolia/, 'I am eating something right at this moment'.

The immediate future (See Note 3.2) and the immediate present are both used to describe something which is going to happen very soon. If the immediate present is used, the event is so near that it is considered to have already begun, e.g., /alangi kokende/, 'He is going', 'He is already starting to leave', /alingi kokende/, 'He's about to go', 'He's going to leave in just a little bit'.
3.4 Potential Future

The prefix /-ko-/ plus the imperfective suffix with low tone form the potential future. The potential future may be any time in the future, but it is rather indefinite, i.e., it is much less sure to take place than the immediate and proximate futures, e.g., /nakoyáa/, 'I will come', 'I plan/intend to come'.

3.5 Imperative.

The imperative (commands) singular consists of the verb stem plus a high tone imperfective suffix, e.g., /Kendé/, 'Go', 'Go away.

The imperative plural consists of the prefix /bo-/ plus the imperative singular, e.g., /bosálá/, 'work' (speaking to more than one person). However, the imperative singular is often used when addressing more than one person.

/-yáa/ is irregular in the imperative, e.g., /yáká/, 'Come', /yákáká/, 'Come regularly'.

3.6 Spelling of long identical vowels

/koyáa/ is //koya//. Compare Note 2.9

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Nalingí kolia. I want to eat.
4. Nalingaka kolia mbísí. I like to eat fish.
5. Nalingaka mpongú ná nyama. I often eat manioc leaves with meat.
8. **Balingi nsoso na loso.** They like chicken and rice.
9. **Balingi koloba Lingala.** They are going to speak Lingala.
10. **Azali koloba Lingala.** He's speaking (in) Lingala.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2**

1. Tozali koyekola Lingala. We are studying Lingala.
2. Tozali bana na ye. We are his children.
3. Bozali bana na ye. You are his children.
4. Bozali kokende. You are leaving.
5. Alingi kokende. He wants to leave.
6. Alingi koyaa na mwasi na ye. He wants to come with his wife.
7. Akoki koyaa na mwasi na ye. He can come with his wife.
8. Akoki kolia na ngai. He can eat with me.
9. Balingi kolia na ngai. They want to eat with me.
10. Balingi kokende lelo. They want to leave today.

**Question and Answer Drill 1**

Answer the questions with a full sentence as directed by the underlined cues.

1. **Olingi koyaa lelo na ndako na ngai?** Do you want to come to my house today?
   **Efe, nalingi koyaa lelo na ndako na yip.** Yes, I want to come to your house.

2. **Okozwa ntangu ya koyaa na ndako na ngai?** Will you have time to come to my house?
   **Efe, nakozwa ntangu ya koyaa na ndako na yip.** Yes, I'll have time to come to your house.
3. Bolingí kolía níní?  What do you (pl.) want to eat?  
   Tolingí kolía nsósó ná lóso.  We want chicken and rice. 

4. Balambaka níní?  What do they usually prepare?  
   Balambaka mbísl, mpondú ná nyama.  They usually prepare fish and manioc leaves with meat. 

5. Baákolámba níní?  What are they going to prepare?  
   Baákolámba mbísl, mpondú ná nyama.  They are going to prepare fish and manioc leaves with meat. 

6. Akókí koyáa ná bána na yé té?  Can't he bring his children?  
   Té, akokí koyáa ná bána na yé tý.  No, he can't bring his children. 

7. Bokókí kokëndë bíuí míbalé tý. Can't you both go?  
   Té, tokokí kokëndë bíuí míbalé tý.  No, we both can't go. 

8. Ozálí na níní na ndáko?  What do you have in the house?  
   Nazálí na vínu ná masanga ya mbíla na ndáko.  I have wine and palm wine in the house. 

9. Omélaka níní?  What do you usually drink?  
   Namélaka masanga ya mbíla.  I usually drink palm wine. 

10. Bolobaka ndínga níní?  What language do you usually speak?  
   Tolobaka Lingála.  We usually speak Lingala.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Okayaa Ɇɛló na ndáko na ngài. You will come to my house tomorrow.
2. Okoyaa kólía nsóso na nyama. You will come to eat chicken and meat.
3. Nakolámba nsóso na nyama. I will prepare chicken and meat.
4. Nakolámba sóköy nazví ntángu. I will fix (some) if I get time.
5. Nakokándé Ɇɛló sóköy nazví ntángu. I'll go today if I have time.
6. Nakokándé Ɇɛló na ndáko na ye. I'll go to his house today.
7. Bakozala na ndáko na ye. They will be at his house.
8. Bakozala ná mwási na ngái. They will be with my wife.
9. Nakokándé komélé ná mwási na ngái. I'm going out drinking with my wife.
10. Nakokándé komélé vínu na masanga ya mbíla. I'm going out to drink wine and beer.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Aliíaka mpongú na nyama. He always eats manioc leaves and meat.
2. Aliíi mpongú na nyama. He ate manioc leaves and meat.
3. Aliíi nsóso. He ate (the) chicken.
4. Bokokí kozwá nsóso. You (pl.) can have (the) chicken.
5. Bokokí kozwá mbísi ná nyama. You (pl.) can have (the) fish and also (the) meat.
6. Balingí mbísi ná nyama. They want (the) fish and (the) meat too.
7. Balingi kokendé na ndáko. They are about to go home.
8. Tozali kokendé na ndáko. We are on the way home.
9. Tozali kolamba nyama. We are cooking the meat.
10. Ayebi kolamba nyama. She knows how to fix the meat.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Mamá a kolamba nsoso ná lósó. Mother is going to fix chicken and rice.
2. Mamá a kolamba nsoso ná lósó. Mother will fix chicken and rice.
4. Mamá alambaka nsoso ná lósó. Mother fixes chicken and rice, quite often.
5. Mamá azalí kolamba nsoso ná lósó. Mother is fixing the chicken and rice now.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli akokendé leló. My son will leave today.
3. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli aísokendé leló. My son is leaving (later) today.
4. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli azalí kokendé leló. My son is leaving (right away) today.
5. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli akendaka ntango nyónso. My son regularly leaves at this time.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7


3.7 Possessive Construction with Infinitive.

ntángu ya koyáa

When an infinitive is the possessor noun in a possessive construction, the infinitive is descriptive and usually translates as (1) a complimentary infinitive, (2) 'for' plus a gerund, or (3) present participle, e.g., /ntángu ya kolía/, (1) 'time to eat', (2) 'time for eating', or (3) 'eating time'.

3.8 Immediate Past of /-líá/

/-líá/ has an irregular immediate past /-léí/.

3.9 Order of Possessive and Descriptive Phrases

mwána na ngáí ya mobálí

It both a possessive and a descriptive phrase modify a noun, the possessive phrase comes first, as in the phrase above, 'my son'.
Unit 4

Basic Sentences

-A-

díl
mönq, móna
'chutes', (ba-)
bóongó
-téleme
wápi

1. Díl, nalingí komóna
   bachutes, bóongó nakoki
   kotéleme wápi?
   Say, I'd like to see the rapids.
   Where can I go to get a good
   view of them?

-B-

2. Oyébi ndáko ya 'President'
   na Binza?
   Do you know the President's
   house at Binza?

-A-

3. Ée, nayébi.
   Yes, I do.

-B-

-mata
 mwáa
 ngóbá, n-
 esiká, bi-

4. Okomata mwá ngóbá esiká ya
   'monument' ya 'Stanley'
   ezalí.
   You climb the hill where the
   monument to Stanley is.
-A-

nsima, n- back, rear, later, afterwards

na nsima then, next

5. Na nsima? And then what?

-B-

lobókó, libókó, ma- arm, sleeve, side
mwásí, ba- left, female
libángá, ma- rock, stone
loléngé, ndéngé, n- sort, kind; manner, way;

6. Na nsíma okomóna na lobókó Then you will see all sorts of
ya mwásí mabángá ndéngé rocks on the left.
na ndéngé.

-A-

melesi (merci) thanks
tíkala to stay, remain

7. Melesi, tíkalá malámu. Thanks, goodbye.

-B-

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Kangá ndáko. Close the door.
Kangá monóko ya ndáko. Close the door.
Fungólá lininísa. Open the window.
Fungólá búuku. Open your book(s).
Lóbá lisúsu. Say it again.
Lóbá nsíma na ngáí. Repeat after me.
Yóká malámu. Listen carefully.
Zóngísá na motúna óyo. Answer the question.

-kanga
to stop, cease; close, shut, take, grasp, wrap up
mónóko, mi-
mouth, opening; word, message
-fungola
to open, release, unlock
lininísa, ma-
window
lisúsu
again, anew; besides, moreover
búuku, (ba-)
book
-zóngisa
to send/give back, answer
motúna, mi-
question
óyo
this, these, the

4.1 Noun Classes

Lingala nouns are divided into several classes, which are distinguished by class prefixes. The MO-BA and the Ø-BA classes were introduced in Unit 1. Besides kinship terms, the Ø-BA class contains most recently-borrowed words, e.g., /chutes/, /bachutes/, 'rapids'. The plural prefix appears after each noun the first
time it occurs. All the nouns beginning with /mo-/ in the previous lessons belong to the MO-BA class except /mobáli/ and /mokep/, which are MO-MI class. All the nouns in previous lessons beginning with a nasal consonant (m or n) plus another consonant are N-N class. There is now a rather strong tendency among younger people to put nouns of the N-N class into the Ø-BA class, i.e., instead of /ndáko/, 'house' and/or 'houses', some young people say /ndáko/, 'house' and /bandáko/, 'houses', but the N-N pattern is still the dominant one for this class of noun.

The various noun classes are listed below. Note which singulars go with which plurals.

**NOUN CLASSES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX CLASS</th>
<th>SINGULAR (ENGLISH)</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MO-BA</td>
<td>motu (person)</td>
<td>batu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ø-BA</td>
<td>tatá (father)</td>
<td>batatá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MO-MI</td>
<td>monéne (big)</td>
<td>minéne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI-MA</td>
<td>libángá (rock)</td>
<td>mabángá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BO-MA</td>
<td>bobína (dance)</td>
<td>mabína</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO-MA</td>
<td>lokolo (leg, foot)</td>
<td>makolo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-BI</td>
<td>ebale (river)</td>
<td>b1bale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO-N</td>
<td>lopété (ring)</td>
<td>mpété</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MO-N</td>
<td>mosúk1 (hair)</td>
<td>nsúk1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-N</td>
<td>nzeté (tree)</td>
<td>nzeté</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KO</td>
<td>kobóta (to give birth)</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2 Verb Subject Prefixes

In Unit 1 the verb prefixes for animate subjects were introduced. Animate is here restricted to men and animals. In the third person animate/inanimate is distinguished. In the singular, the verb prefix is /a-/ if the subject is animate, but /e-/ if the subject is inanimate. In the plural, the verb prefix is /ba-/ if the subject is animate, but is the same as the prefix on the noun if the subject is inanimate with the exception that the inanimate N-N class has the plural verb prefix /m1-/ , e.g., /ndako m1zalí.../ , 'the houses are...'.

If there is an adjective after a plural noun, the prefix to the verb is in concord with the adjective prefix, e.g., /mábángá/ m1nénë m1zalí.../ , 'the big rocks are...'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSON</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>na-</td>
<td>to-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>o-</td>
<td>bo-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd animate</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd inanimate</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>m1-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>b1-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONCORD OF NOUN AND VERB PREFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSON</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd animate</td>
<td>mo-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ø-</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd inanimate</td>
<td>mo-</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>mi-</td>
<td>mi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>li-</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bo-</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lo-</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lo-</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>n-</td>
<td>mi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>b1-</td>
<td>b1-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n-</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>n-</td>
<td>mi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ko-</td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONCORD OF NOUN AND VERB PREFIXES

1. *Mwàna azalí...* The child is...
2. *Bàna bazalí...* The children are...
3. *Mobálí azalí...* The man is...
4. *Mibálí bazalí...* The men are...
5. *Lìbángà ezalí...* The rock is...
6. *Mabàngà mazalí...* The rocks are...
7. *Mòtuka ezalí...* The automobile is...
8. Mítuka mizalí... The automobiles are...
9. Elóko azalí... The thing is...
10. Bilóko bizalí... The things are...
11. Ndáko ezalí... The house is...
12. Ndáko mizalí... The houses are...

In some dialects of Lingala, especially up-river from Leopoldville, the verb prefix in the third person in both the singular and the plural is the same as that of the prefix of the inanimate noun subject except that the N-N class has /e-/ sg. and /-l/ pl. for the verb suffix. Written Lingala usually follows up-river Lingala in this respect.

4.3 Nasal Homorganic with Following Consonant.

loléngé, ndéngé

Only certain combinations of nasal consonant plus another consonant occur. A nasal consonant is homorganic with the following consonant, i.e., it is made in the same mouth position as the following consonant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NASAL</th>
<th>BEFORE CONSONANT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labial</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>p, b, f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dental</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>t, d, s, z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velar</td>
<td>η</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>k, g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/n/ plus /l/ is /nd-/; e.g., /loléngé/, 'kind', /ndéndé/, 'kinds'. However, the plural form of this word is often used as a collective singular.

/n/ plus /y/ is /nz/, e.g., /n-/ plus /-yembo/ is /nzémb/, 'song'. What is written /ny/ in the orthography as in /nyama/,
'meat', represents a single sound, an \([j]\), i.e., a palatal nasal. This sound can be approximated by pronouncing 'y' through the nose. /nz/ is a sequence of two sounds, /n/ plus /z/.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mobáli, mi-</td>
<td>right, male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libosó, ma-</td>
<td>front; before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Tolíngi kokéndé komóna bachutes.</td>
<td>We want to go see the rapids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Bazáli kokéndé komóna bachutes.</td>
<td>They are about to see the rapids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Bazáli komata ngómbé.</td>
<td>They are climbing the mountain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Boyébi komata ngómbé.</td>
<td>You are acquainted with mountain climbing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Boyébi ndákó ya 'President'. You know where the President's house is.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Namóní ndákó ya 'President'. I saw the President's house.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Natikálí na tatá ya bangó.</td>
<td>I'm remaining with their father.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Azáli libosó na ndákó.</td>
<td>He's in front of the house.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Tatá na ngái alingí komóna ndákó.</td>
<td>My father is coming to see the house right away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Mamá na bisú alingí komóna ndákó.</td>
<td>Our mother is coming to see the house right away.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Mamá na bí sí akotíkala na
   ndáko.
4. Mwána mokò akotíkala na
   ndáko.
5. Mwána mokò azálí na lìbángá.
6. Mobálí na yè azálí na lìbángá.
7. Mobálí na yè azálí lìbosó na
   ndáko.
8. Bána ya yò bazálí lìbosó
   na ndáko.
9. Bána na yò bazálí kolámaba
   nsósó.

Our mother will stay in the
house.
The small child will stay in
the house.
The small child has a rock.
Her husband has a rock.
Her husband is in front of
the house.
Your children are in front of
the house.
Your children are cooking
chicken.
The women are cooking chicken.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nazálí na ndáko.
2. Nazálí na ndáko.
3. Nazálí na bána mìbalé.
4. Azálí mamá ya bána mìbalé.
5. Azálí mamá ya tatá na yò.
6. Lèlò tomóni tatá na yò.
7. Lèlò tomóni mabángá ndéngé
   na ndéngé.
8. Na nsíma okomóna na lòbòko
   ya mwásì mabángá ndéngé.

I'm at home.
I have a house.
I have two children.
She is the mother of two
children.
She is your father's mother.
Today we saw your father.
Today we saw all kinds of
rocks.
Then you will see all sorts
of rocks on the left.
9. Na nsíma okomóna na lóbóka
\[\text{Then you will see their house}\]
\[\text{ya mwásí ndáko ya bangó.}\]

10. Na lóboso okomóna na lóbóka
\[\text{Before that you will see their}\]
\[\text{ya mobáli ndáko ya bangó.}\]

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4**

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize the verbs.

1. Mwána moké akotíkala na
\[\text{ndáko.}\]
\[\text{The small child will stay in}\]
\[\text{Bána miké bakotíkala na}\]
\[\text{the house.}\]
\[\text{ndáko.}\]
\[\text{The small children will stay}\]
\[\text{in the houses.}\]

2. Tatá na ngáí alingí komóna
\[\text{ndáko.}\]
\[\text{My father is coming to see the}\]
\[\text{Batatá na bísú balingí}\]
\[\text{house.}\]
\[\text{komóna ndáko.}\]
\[\text{Our fathers are coming to see}\]
\[\text{in the houses.}\]

3. Mobáli na yé azalí na
\[\text{libangá.}\]
\[\text{Her husband has a rock.}\]
\[\text{Mibáli na bangó bazalí}\]
\[\text{Their husbands have rocks.}\]
\[\text{na mabangá.}\]

4. Mamá na yö akolámbe nyama.
\[\text{Your mother will prepare the}\]
\[\text{Bamamá na bínú bakolámbe}\]
\[\text{meat.}\]
\[\text{nyama.}\]
\[\text{Your mothers will prepare the}\]
\[\text{mamá na bínú bakolámbe}\]
\[\text{meats.}\]
\[\text{nyama.}\]

5. Azalí mwána malámu.
\[\text{She is a good child.}\]
\[\text{Bazalí bána malámu.}\]
\[\text{They are good children.}\]

6. Azalí tatá ya ngáí.
\[\text{He is our father.}\]
\[\text{Bazalí batatá ya bísú.}\]
\[\text{They are our fathers.}\]
7. NAYOKI MWAÍNA NA YE YA 
MOBALI TÉ.

TOYOKI BÁNA NA BANGÓ YA 
MIBALI TÉ.

I didn't understand his son.

We didn't understand their sons.

8. BALOBAKA NDINGA NÍNI NA 
LEÓ?

BALOBAKA NDINGA NÍNI NA 
LEÓ?

What language is spoken at 
Leopoldville?

What languages are spoken at 
Leopoldville?

9. MAMÁ NA NGÀI AÁKOTIKALA 
NA MWAÍNA.

BAMAMÁ NA BÍSÚ BAÁKOTIKALA 
NA BÁNA.

My mother is staying with the 
child.

Our mothers are staying with 
the children.

10. LIBANGÁ MOKÉ EZALI LIBOSÓ 
YA NDÁKO.

MABANGÁ MÎKÉ MÍZALI LIBOSÓ 
YA NDÁKO.

There is a little rock in 
front of the house.

There are little stones in 
front of the house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize the verbs.

1. MOBALI AZALI NA LOPÊTE MOKÉ.

MIBÁLI BAZALI NA MPÊTE MIKÉ.

The man has a little ring.

The men have little rings.

2. LIBANGÁ MÔNENÉ EZALI NA 
esiká óyo.

MABANGÁ MÔNENÉ MÍZALI NA 
esiká óyo.

There is a big rock at this 
place.

There are big rocks at this 
place.

3. MWÁSI AZALI LIBOSÓ YA LIBANGÁ 
MÔNENÉ.

The woman is in front of a 
big rock.
The women are in front of big rocks.
The child is on the left side of the house.
The children are on the left side of the house.
Someone will close the window.
Some people will close the windows.
The boy is asking a question.
The boys are asking questions.
The woman obeys her husband.
The women obey their husbands.
There is a tree behind the house.
There are trees behind the house(s).
The girl went to a dance.
The girls went to dances.
Someone has closed (his) book.
Some people have closed (their) books.
1. Mwásí na ngái ayébi ndáko. My wife knows where the house is.


3. Tatá na bírí azalí na ndáko mibalé. Our father has two houses.

4. Tatá na bírí azalí na lobókó ya mobálí ya ndáko. Our father is on the right side of the house.


8. Batu nyónso batélémi libosó na ndáko. Everyone is standing in front of the house.

9. Bána miké batélémi libosó na ndáko. The small children have stopped before the house.

10. Bána miké bazalí komata mwáa ngómbo. The little children are climbing the hill.

4.4 Adjectives

Lingala has only a few adjectives, but is in the process of developing several new ones. An adjective follows the noun it modifies, e.g., /mwána moké/, 'a small child'. New adjectival constructions are formed by /ya/, /mwána ya mobálí/, 'male child', 'son'. Many such constructions now regularly occur without /ya/, so that /mwána mobálí/, 'male child', 'son', is now the preferred form for many younger persons.
Nearly all adjectives are invariable, but there are a few which are marked for singular and plural, such as /moké/, /mlké/.

4.5 Prominence of Initial Sentence Position.

For emphasis an element of a sentence may be placed initially, e.g., /Leló tomóní tatá na yó/, 'Today we saw your father'. This gives an additional bit of emphasis to /léló/, 'today', in contrast to some other day.
Unit 5

Basic Sentences

-A-
1. Ozalí kokəndɛ wápì?  Where are you going?

-B-
2. Nazalí kokəndɛ na mosálá.  I'm on my way to work.

-A-
3. Osálaka wápì?  Where do you work?

-B-
4. Ngaí, nazalí mécanicien na CEGEAC.  Me, I'm a mechanic at CEGEAC.

-A-
5. Mosálá ya bínú ebandaka ntάngu níni?  What time do you being work?

-B-
45
6. Mosálá ya bísu ebendaka na ngonga ya nsambo na ntóngó

Our work starts at seven in the morning.

7. Nakoki koyéba esíká osálaka té?

Might I know where you work?

-A-

'Bconvétaire'
secretary

'Bambassade'
embassy

Me, I'm a secretary at the American Embassy.

-A-

áwa
here

mökollo, mi-
day

9. Oyákí áwa mopólo níní?
When did you arrive?

-B-

mposó
week, Saturday; salary, pay

mísoto, mísatu
three

10. Óyo mposó ya mísatu.
This is my third week.

-A-

-solola
to talk, converse, speak, tell

mpó, mpóo, m-
thing, affair, matter;
because, on account of

mbango, mbangu, m-
speed, swiftness
11. Malámu, mokuolo níni tokosolola malámu, mpóo, naákokëndë mbángu na mósála.

Well then, we can have a chat one of these days; but now I'm in a hurry to get to work.

-B-
-pésa
to give, provide with
numéro (numéro)
number
-yébisa
advise, inform, make known


Give me your telephone number so I'll have it.

-A-
13. Numéro quatre-vingts
trois, cinquante deux.

8352.

NUMERALS

mokuó one
mibalé two
mísáto, mísatu three
mineí four
mitáno, mitánu five
motóba six
nsambo seven
mwambe, mwambi eight
libwá nine
zómi  
zen
zómi na mókó  
eleven
zómi na míbalé  
twelve
ntúkú míbalé  
twenty
ntúkú míbalé na mókó  
twenty-one
ntúkú míjáto  
thirty
ntúkú míjáto na míbalé  
three-two
ntúkú míne1  
forty
nkáma, monkáma, mokáma, (m1-)  
hundred
nkáma mítáno  
five hundred
nkóto  
thousand
nkóto nsambo  
seven thousand

NOTES

5.1 Nouns of deed or action, type 1.

A limited number of nouns meaning the act or deed of the verb base are formed by the MO-MI prefix class plus a high-tone /-á/ suffix, e.g., /mosálá/, 'work', 'job', 'occupation'.

5.2 Independent or Emphatic Subject Pronouns.

Ngái, nazalí 'mécanicien' na CEGEÁC.

In Unit 1 the independent pronouns were introduced with the tones they have in possessive constructions. All independent pronouns except /ngái/ are invariable; but when an independent or emphatic subject /ngái/ is /ngái/, as in /Ngái, nazalí 'mécanicien' na CEGEÁC/, 'Me, I'm a mechanic at CEGEÁC.'
5.3 Very Polite Questions and Requests

Nakoké koyeba esíká osálaka té?

To ask a question or make a request in a very polite way, /-koki/ prefaces the question or request, which is expressed with an infinitive, and /té/ occurs at the very end, e.g., /Nakoké koyeba esíká osálalaka té?/, 'Might I know where you work?', 'Would you be so kind as to tell me where you work?'

5.4 Vowel harmony in noun prefixes.

mokolo

When a noun prefix containing a mid vowel occurs before a secondary vowel in the first syllable of a base, the prefix vowel is for many younger speakers low mid, e.g., /mokolo/, 'day', except the infinitive which has a primary vowel in the prefix, e.g., /komono/, 'to see'.

5.5 Recent Past: Recent Past Progressive

okaki áwa mokolo níni?

The combination of the extension /-ák-/ and the perfective suffix /-í/ forms the recent past. The recent past most often refers to something which took place no later than the day before yesterday but within the last month; however, if the speaker considers the event to have happened recently, the recent past may refer to a few months ago, or in some cases even a few years ago. Likewise, it may refer to a time later than the day before yesterday if the speaker wants to imply recentness but not something which has just taken place. In the example given above from the dialogue, the questioner implies that he knows that the American has arrived only recently in Leopoldville, e.g., /Oyakí áwa mokolo níni?, 'When did you arrive?', 'You have arrived only recently, haven't you?'.

49
For verbs of state or existence, the recent past implies a state existing in or arrived at in the recent past, e.g., /nayébakí/, 'I knew', 'I came to know', or /ekokáki/, 'it was enough', 'it came to be sufficient'.

The recent past often indicates something which happened before something else in the past and thus translates like an English past perfect, e.g., /aliákí ntángu na nayákí/, 'He had eaten before I came'.

The past progressive is composed of the recent past of /-zala/ plus an infinitive, e.g., /nazalákí kolía/, 'I was eating'. The past progressive indicates something that was going on or continuing to happen for an indefinite short or temporary period, whereas the recent past indicates a point in or definite block of time, e.g., /nazalákí kolía ntángu ayákí/ 'I was eating when he came.'

5.6 Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals.

mpósó ya misátu

Cardinal numerals like other adjectives follow the noun they modify, e.g., /mpósó misátu/, 'three weeks'; but unlike many adjectives, /ya/ may not be inserted between a numeral and the noun it modifies without a change of meaning because /ya/ plus a numeral is an ordinal, e.g., /mpósó ya misátu/, 'the third week'.

5.7 Telephone Numbers

Telephone numbers are given in French in two-digit numbers, e.g., 'quatre-vingts trois, cinquante deux', '8352'.

5.8 Plural of /mokámá/, 'hundred'

/mikámá/, 'hundreds', is used only in /mikámá na mikámá/, 'hundreds and hundreds'; elsewhere, the singular form is used, e.g., /mokámá nsambo/, 'seven hundred'. Other numerals do not have plural form.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Azali kokendé wap1?
2. Otiki secretaire wap1?
3. Bakendeki wap1?
4. Akei wap1?
5. Bozalaka wap1?
6. Balaka wap1?
7. Ndako ya bimi ezali wap1?
8. Osalaka wap1?
9. Balobaka Lingala wap1?
10. Olingi kokendé wap1?

Where is he going?
Where did you drop off the secretary?
Where did they go?
Where is he going? Where has he just gone?
Where do you live?
Where do you usually eat?
Where is your house?
Where do you work?
Where is Lingala spoken?
Where do you want to go? Where are you about to go?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nakei mosalá
2. Nakei na esika nasalaka.
3. Azali mecanicien na esika nasalaka.
4. Azali na ntangu malamu.
5. Azali liboso na ntangu.
6. Azali nsima na ntangu.
7. Azali kokendé mbangu na mosalá?
8. Secrétaire azali kokendé mbangu na mosalá.

I'm on the way to work.
I'm going to the place where I work.
He is a mechanic at the place where I work.
He's on time.
He's early.
He's late.
He's hurrying to work.
The secretary is hurrying to work.
9. Secrétaire azaláki kosolola na ngái.
   The secretary was talking to me.

10. Mécanicien azaláki kosolola na ngái.
   The mechanic was talking to me.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Ozaláki kokéndé wapí?
   Where were you going?

2. Ozaláki komónó níni?
   What were you looking at?

3. Olingáki komónó níni?
   What did you want to see?

4. Olingáki kokéndé komónó monument ya Stanley?
   Did you want to go see the monument to Stanley?

5. Bazaláki kokéndé komónó monument ya Stanley?
   Were they going to see the monument to Stanley?

6. Bazaláki kokéndé kolámba mbisí?
   Were they leaving to fix the fish?

7. Mwána azaláki kokéndé kolámba mbisí?
   Was the child leaving to fix the fish?

8. Mwána azaláki na mpondú ná nyama.
   Did the child have manioc leaves and meat?

9. Mama na yo azaláki na mpondú ná nyama?
   Did your mother have manioc leaves and meat?

10. Mama na yo akotíkala na ndáko?
    Is your mother going to stay in the house?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

Read the numbers horizontally.

a) 18  80  28
   17  70  27
   16  60  26
   15  50  25
   14  40  24

b) 40  50  4  5
   14  15  45  54
   60  70  6  7
   16  17  67  76
   20  30  2  3
### GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Read the following times in Lingala according to the model given below.

- **koma**
- **mīnūtu, mīnītî, mīnītî**

Tokomī na ngonga ya mọkọ na mīnūtu ntuku mibalé.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6:20</th>
<th>10:55</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:10</td>
<td>11:55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00</td>
<td>7:35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:05</td>
<td>2:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30</td>
<td>6:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:15</td>
<td>12:50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8:40 9:00
9:50 4:30
1:05 5:45
3:35 3:50

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

-bakisa
-longola
to add
to take away, remove

1. Mökó bakisá mökó, ekóki mibalé.
   One and one is two.

2. Mítano bakisá mísáto, ekóki mwambe.
   Five and three is eight.

3. Nsambo bakisá libwá, ekóki zómi na motóba.
   Seven and nine is sixteen.

   Four and two is six.

5. Libwá bakisá motóba, ekóki zómi na mítano.
   Nine and six is fifteen.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Mibalé longólá mökó,
   Two minus one is one.
etikálí mökó.

2. Mínei longólá mibalé,
   Four minus two is two.
etikálí mibalé.

3. Ntúkú mibalé longólá
   Twenty minus ten is ten.
   zómi, etikálí zómi.
4. Ntúkú mísa-tu longólá
   ntúkú mibalé na móko,
etíkáli lëbwá.

   Thirty minus twenty-one is nine.

5. Ntúkú mwambe longólá
   ntúkú nsambo, etikáli
   zómi.

   Eighty minus seventy is ten.

5.9 'Passive' Plural

   Balobaka Língála wápi?

   That something 'is done' is often expressed by the third
   person plural, e.g., /Balobaka Língála wápi?/, 'Where is Língála
   spoken?', 'Where do they speak Língála?' See also Note 10.2.

5.10 Adjectival Subordinate Clauses.

   Nakeí na ešíka nasálaka.

   Adjectival subordinate clauses are not introduced by a
   relative, but are placed after the noun they modify just like any
   other adjective. Note /nasálaka/ in /Nakeí na ešíka nasálaka/,
   'I'm going to the place where I work.'

5.11 /kosolola na/

   Secrétaire azalákí kosolola na ngaí.

   If followed by an object, /kosolola/ requires the particle
   /na/, e.g., /Secrétaire azalákí kosolola na ngaí/, 'The secretary
   was talking to me'.
Unit 6

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Mbóte, mwána mwásí. Good afternoon, Miss.

-B-

2. Éé, mbóte. Good afternoon.

-A-

'bureau'

3. Oyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine? Is this Mr. Antoine's office?

-B-

míngi

yangó

much, many

it, they, them

4. Yangó, kási azali na mosálá míngi lélé. It is, but he's very busy today.

-A-

likambo, ma-

difference, dispute, case, affair

5. Nalingi náloba na yé likambo. I would like to tell him something

-B-

-lobela

to speak to

t hat...

6. Nalobélí yö te alingi komóno motu té lélé na bureau na yö. I just told you that he doesn't want to see anyone at his office today.
**A-**

-túna  
-koṭa, -koṭo  

7. Okokí kotúna yé te sòkò alingí nákọta?  
Would you ask him if I can come in?

**B-**

8. Lobélá ngáí likambo olingí.  
Tell me what you want.

**A-**

-tála  

9. Etálí bású míbalé, yó té.  
It concerns only us, not you.

**B-**

-bóya  

10. Sòkò obóyi, okokóta na bureau na yé té.  
If you refuse (to tell me), you can't go in.

**A-**

-libótá, ma-  

11. Ezálí likambo ya libótá na yé.  
It concerns his family.

**B-**

motu, moto, ba-  

12. Motu mòkò akúfí?  
Has someone died?
UNIT 6 LINGALA

- A -

nókö, bá-

mpásí, m-

makásí

maternal uncle (see Note 19.3.)
sickness, suffering, pain,
misery, difficulty
strong, hard, difficult,
troublesome

13. Nókö na yé azalí na mpásí
makásí. His uncle is gravely ill.

14. Azálí wápí, na ndáko too
na lopitálo? Where is he, at home or at the
hospital?

- B -

too'

lopitálo, balopitálo
(l'hôpital)
or
hospital

15. Bakeí na yé na lopitálo
síka óyo. They have taken him to the
hospital just now.

- A -

síka

now, just now; new, recent


- B -

-zíla

to wait, wait for

17. Melesí. Thanks.

18. Likambo tó. You are welcome. Don't mention
it. It's nothing.
BASIC COURSE

UNIT 6

USEFUL PHRASES

Mọkolọ ezalí malámu. The weather is nice.
Likoló ezalí malámu. The sky is clear.
Mọkolọ ezalí mabé. The weather is bad.
Likoló ezalí mabé. The sky is cloudy.
Lọlọ mpíọ míngi. It's cold today.
Lọlọ mpíọ makásì. It's cold today.
Lọlọ móí míngi. It's hot today.
Lọlọ móí makásì. It's hot today.
Lọlọ molungé míngi. It's hot today. It's stifling today.

Likoló eyéí kitóko. It's clearing up.
Likoló eyéí mabé. It's clouding up.
Mbúla ezalí konóko. It's raining.
Mbúla ékonóko. It's raining.

likoló, ma-
sky, heaven; upstream;
outside, exterior; on top,
over, on, above; surface;
because of

mabé
bad, evil, ugly
cold

mpíọ, m-
sun, sunlight, daylight,
the heat of the sun

móí
warmth, heat; fever,
sweat; stifling

molungé, m-
betterful, pretty, fine;
delicious, clean, neat

kitóko
mbúla, m- rain, year, rainy season
-nó, -nóko to rain

6.1 Equational Sentences

Ôyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?

Equational sentences are sentences which have no verb in which (1) two nouns are equated, e.g., /Mosálá na ngáí mécanician/, 'I am a mechanic,' (2) a pronoun and noun are equated, e.g., /Ôyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?/, 'Is this Mr. Antoine's office?' or (3) possession is demonstrative, e.g., /Ndáko ya tata na bangó/, 'The house belongs to their father'. In all three types there is an optional and equally current expression with the same meaning in which the two parts of the equation are linked by /-zali/, e.g., /Mosálá na ngáí ezalí mécanician/, 'I am a mechanic'.

6.2 Non-animate Independent Pronouns

Yangó

In Unit I the independent forms of the animate pronoun were introduced. There is also an independent inanimate pronoun /yangó/, 'it', 'they', 'them', which has the same form for singular and plural, e.g., /Pésa yé yangó/, 'Give it to him', 'Give them to him'.

6.3 Subjunctive

Nalingí náloba na yé likambó.

The subjunctive is marked by a high tone on the pronoun prefix and a low tone imperfective suffix, e.g., /náloba/, 'that I talk', as in /Nalingí náloba na yé likambó/, 'I would like to tell him something', literally, 'I want that I tell to him something'. Using the subjunctive is a very polite way of making a request, 'I want to tell him something', would be construed with an infinitive after /-linga/, as in /Nalingí koloba na yé likambo/.

60
The subjunctive is also used as an imperative, e.g., /Bólía/, 'Eat' (speaking to more than one person), or as a cohortative, e.g., /Tólía/, 'Let's eat'.

The subjunctive is also used to ascertain what another person wants done, e.g., /Nálía?/, 'Do you want me to eat?' or 'Do you think I should eat?'

To indicate obligation, i.e., 'should', 'ought to', /ekoki/ plus the subjunctive is used, e.g., /Ekoki ákînde/, 'He should go', 'He ought to go', 'It is fitting that he go'.

6.4 Applicative Suffix

Nalobélí yó

The applicative suffix /-el-/ means 'to do something for or to someone', e.g., /nalobélí yó/, 'I told (to) you'. The same meaning can be expressed by /na/ as by /-el-/ e.g., /nalobí na yó/, 'I told (to) you'.

6.5 Indirect Discourse: Particle /te/.

Nalobélí yó te alingí komóno motu té

Indirect discourse is often introduced by the optional particle /te/, 'that', as in /Nalobélí yó te alingí komóno motu té/, 'I told you that he didn't want to see anyone'. /te/, 'that', is // /te// to distinguish it from /te/, 'not', which is // /te//.

/te/ sometimes occurs in indirect discourse even if there is another particle at the beginning of the dependent clause, e.g., /Okoki kotúna yé te sókó olingí nákota?/, 'Can you ask him (that) if I can come in?'
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Mosálá na yó nínì? What's your occupation?
2. Mosálá na ngáí mécanicìen. I am a mechanic.
3. Ndáko ya mécanicìen. The house belongs to the mechanic.
4. Ndáko ya tatá na bangó. The house belongs to their father.
5. Azali tatá na bangó. He is their father.
6. Azali kokéndé na mosálá. He is on his way to work. He has (already) left for work.
7. Nalingí kokéndé na mosálá. I'm about to leave for work.
8. Nalingí kokéndé kozwà nyàma. I want to get some meat.
9. Bana bazali kokéndé kozwà nyàma. The children are going to get some meat.
10. Bana bazali komata mabángá. The children are climbing the rocks.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Óyo bureaìu ya Monsièur Zóla. This is Mr. Zola's office.
2. Óyo ndáko ya Monsièur Zóla. This is Mr. Zola's house.
3. Óyo ndáko monéne. This is a big house.
4. Pésa yé ya monéne. Give him the big one.
6. Tozáli kokéndé na mosalà We are going to work.
7. Tozáli kokéndé kotúna yé. We are going to ask him.
8. Mwasì akoki kotúna yé. The woman can ask him.
   The woman can refuse to talk to the man.

10. Mwána azalí kobóya koloba na mobáli.
    The child is going to refuse to speak to the man.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nalobéli yó te nazalí na mosálá.
   I just told you that I'm busy.

2. Nalobéli yé ázíla.
   I told him to wait.

3. Túná yé ázíla.
   Ask him to wait.

4. Túná bangó bákóta.
   Ask them to wait.

5. Alingí bangó bákóta.
   He wants them to come in.

6. Alingí kokéndé na ndákó.
   He wants to go home.

7. Alingí ákéndé na ndákó.
   He's leaving for home right away.

8. Alingí ñéyëba likambo nín ezalí.
   He wants to know what it is.

   He wants to know if you can do it.

10. Alingí ñéyëba sôkó osâlaka na CEGÉAC.
    He wants to know if you work at C.E.G.E.A.C.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Tókéndë koliá.
   Let's go eat.

2. Tókéndë kozwela yé nyama.
   Let's go get him some meat.

3. Tókéndë na ndákó.
   Let's go home.
4. Tolía na ndáko.  Let's eat at home.
5. Tolía loboso' ya kokèndé.  Let's eat before going.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5**

1. Balingi báloba na yo.  They would like to talk to you.
2. Balingi koloba na yo.  They want to talk to you.
3. Balingi kokèndé na yo.  They want to go with you.
4. Balingi bákèndé na yo.  They would like to go with you.
5. Balingi kolía na yo.  They want to eat with you.
6. Balingi bálía na yo.  They would like to eat with you.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6**

1. Mosálá na yo nínî?  What's your occupation?
2. Mosálá na yo mécanicien.  You are a mechanic.
3. Mosálá na yo ezali makasi.  Your work is difficult.
4. Ndáko óyo ezali makasi.  This house is well-built.
5. Ndáko óyo ezali ya tatá ya bangó.  This house belongs to their father.
6. Óyo ndáko ya tatá ya bangó.  This is their father's house.
7. Kendé kolobela tatá ya bangó.  Go talk to their father.
   Go talk on behalf of their father.
8. Kendé kolobela ye te motu mókó akuí.  Go tell him a member of his family has died.
9. Kendé kotúna ye sókó motu mókó akuí.  Go ask him if a member of his family has died.
10. Kendé kotúna ye sókó azalí na ndáko toó na lopitálo.  Go ask him if she is at home or at the hospital.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Nalingi náloba na yé likambo. I would like to tell him something.
2. Nalingi áyaa kotála ngái. I want him to come see me.
5. Zílá ótúna yé. Wait to ask him.
6. Alingí ótúna yé. He wants you to ask her.
7. Alingí álía síka óyo. He would like to eat right away.
8. Atúni álía síka óyo. He asked to eat right away.
9. Atúni ngái náyáa. He asked me to come.
10. Batúni ngái náyáa. I was asked to come.
Unit 7

Basic Sentences

At the market.

-A-

tékə, -tēka
to sell
litungulu, ma-
onion, leek
bóni

1. Tatá, otéka matungulu
nsambo bóni?
How much are you asking for
seven onions? What do you
want for seven onions?

-B-
falánga, falánka (franc)
franc(s)

2. Óyo ya minéné falánga zóm1
na motóba.
The big ones are sixteen francs.

-A-

bőongó
thus, so, likewise, therefore

3. Bőongó, ya miké?
And the little ones?

-B-

Eight francs.

-A-

5. Nalingi míbalé ya minéné
na mine1 ya miké.
I'd like two big ones and four
little ones.

-B-

6. Nákanga motóba?
Should I wrap up the six?
7. Éqi. 

- A-
Yes.

- B-

8. Pésá falánga nsambo. 

- sómba
pilipíli

That will be seven francs.
to buy
red pepper; (black pepper)

9. Osómba pilipíli té?

-luka
-lukela
mpáta
matabísí (matabíche)

Don't you want to buy any peppers?
to hunt, search for
to get for someone
five-franc piece
tip, gratuity, advantage, profit, matabíche, something extra given as an incentive to buy

10. Lukélé ngái ya malámù,
yá mpáta mibálé, ná matabísí.

Pick me out some good ones for ten francs. Also add the matabíche.

-zónga
to go/come back

11. Lelo matabísí ezalí té,
zóngá lóbí.

There's no matabíche today, come back tomorrow.

USEFUL PHRASES

1. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa léló
na ntóngó.

My wife is coming this morning.

2. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa léló
na mpókwa.

My wife is coming this afternoon.
3. Mwásí na ngáí akoýáa lēlō na butú. My wife is coming tonight.
4. Mwásí na ngáí akoýáa lēlō na mīdī. My wife is coming at noon.
5. Mwásí na ngáí akoýáa lēlō na mīdī ya butú. My wife is coming at midnight.
6. Mwásí na ngáí akoýáa na mpośo oyo. My wife will arrive this week.
7. Mwásí na ngáí akoýáa na sanza oyo. My wife will arrive this month.
8. Mwásí na ngáí akoýáa lōbī ekoyāa. My wife will arrive the day after tomorrow.
9. Mwásí na ngáí ayáki lōbī eleki. My wife arrived the day before yesterday.
10. Mwásí na ngáí ayáki na mpośo eleki. My wife arrived last week.

ntôngọ, n- morning, forenoon (5-11)
mīdī noon (11-2)
mpókwa, n- afternoon (2-6)
butú night (6-5)
mīdī ya butú midnight (11-1)
sanza moon, month
-leka to go past, past by; die;
surpass, excel, be more than

68
7.1 Desiderative

otēka matungulu nsambo bōnī?

The desiderative is marked by a low tone imperfective suffix and means 'to want to', 'to expect to', 'to care to', /otēka matungulu nsambo bōnī/, 'What do you want for seven onions?', 'What do you expect to get for seven onions?', or /olīa/, 'Do you want to eat?', 'Would you care to eat?', 'Would you care for something to eat?', 'You want/would like to eat...'

7.2 Nominalization of Adjectives

Both single-word and phrasal adjectives are nominalized by the particle /ya/, e.g., /ya Monsieur Antoine/, 'Mr. Antoine's', /ya ngāi/ 'mine', and /ya monēne/, 'a big one'. Nominalized adjectives occur in the sentence like any other noun, e.g., /Ya monēne ezali kitōko/, 'The big one is beautiful'. In the plural, the verb prefix is /bī-/ or sometimes /mī-/, e.g., /Ya mīnēne buzali kitōko/, 'The big ones are beautiful'.

PATTERN DRILL 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nāni</th>
<th>who</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Lobélá ngāi likambo olingi.</td>
<td>Tell me what you want.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Lobélá ngāi akēndēki wāpī.</td>
<td>Tell me where he went.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Lobélá ngāi azalī wāpī.</td>
<td>Tell me where he is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lobélá ngāi azalī nānī.</td>
<td>Tell me who he is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Lobélá ngāi sōkī azalī na ndāko.</td>
<td>Tell me if he is home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Lobélá ngāi sōkī olingi kōlīa.</td>
<td>Tell me if you want to eat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. Lobélá ngaí, mamá na yó azalí malámú.
9. Lobélá ngaí, okoyáa lóbí na ndáko ya ngaí.
10. Lobélá ngaí, oyákí áwa ntángo nín.

Tell me how your mother is.
Tell me if you're coming to my house tomorrow.
Tell me when you arrived.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Nakotéké ndáko na ngaí. I will sell my house.
2. Nakotéké yó ndáko na ngaí. I will sell my house to you.
3. Nakotéké yó matungúlu. I will sell you some onions.
4. Akosómba matungúlu. He will buy some onions.
5. Akosómba lóso na yó. He will buy rice from you.
6. Bakotíkala na lóso na yó. They will keep your rice.
7. Bakotíkala na mbísí na yó. They will look after the fish for you.
8. Tokosómbeła yó mbísí. We will buy the fish for you.
9. Tokosómbeła yó nsósó. We will buy the chicken for you.
10. Akokangela yó nsósó. He’ll wrap up the chicken for you.

QUESTION AND ANSWER DRILL 1

1. Óyo ya minéne bóní? How much are the big ones? Óyo ya minéne mpáta míne1. The big ones are twenty francs.
2. Óyo ya miké bóní? How much are the small ones? Óyo ya miké falánga zómí. The small ones are ten francs.
3. Nānī asōmbēlī yō matungūlu?
    Who paid you for the onions?
    Mwāsī óyo asōmbēlī ngāi matungūlu.
    This woman paid me for the onions.

4. Ntāngō nīnī asōmbēlī yō matungūlu?
    When did she pay you for the onions?
    Asōmbēlī ngāi yango lōbī.
    She paid me for them yesterday.

5. Osōmbākī nīnī?
    What did you buy?
    Nasōmbākī pilipīlī.
    I bought some peppers.

6. Matabīsī nīnī olingī ópēsa ngāi?
    What matabiche will (would) you give me?
    Nalingī nāpēsa yō pilipīlī misātu.
    I'll (I'd) give you three peppers.

7. Olingī nāpēsa yō bóni?
    How many would you like?
    Nalingī ópēsa ngāi zōmī.
    I'd like ten.

8. Nākanga yango?
    Should I wrap them?
    Sōkō olingī, kangā yango.
    Please wrap them.

9. Osōmbākī nyama yango ntāngū nīnī?
    When did you buy that meat?
    Nasōmbākī yango lēlō.
    I bought it today.

10. Nakō kōsōmba pilipīlī zōmī falāngā bóni?
    How much will ten peppers cost?
    Okōkī kōsōmba falāngā zōmī na mībāle.
    You can buy (them) for twelve francs.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

etabe, bi-

lilála, ma-

madésu

mbálá, m-

1. Mwási azalí na madésu ya minééné.
   The woman has large beans.

2. Nasombáki madésu ya minééné.
   I bought some large beans.

3. Nasombáki bitabe ná matungulú.
   I bought some bananas and some onions.

   The boy was selling bananas and onions.

5. Mwána mobáli azalákí kotéka pilipíli.
   The boy was selling peppers.

   Someone wrapped up the peppers for me.

7. Moto mókó atékéli ye malála ya malámu.
   Somebody sold him some nice oranges.

8. Lukélá ngáí malála ya malámu.
   Pick me out some nice oranges.

9. Lukélá ngáí mbálá ya minééné.
   Pick me out some large potatoes.

10. Nákanga mbálá ya minééné?
    Shall I wrap up the large potatoes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Osombéla ngáí matungulú ya mpáta mibalé.
   Buy me ten franc's worth of onions.

2. Osombéla ngáí mbisí na magazíní.
   Buy me some fish at the store.
3. NaakoziLa yo na magaziNi.
   I'll be waiting for you at the store.

4. NaakoziLa yo na ndako ya Polo.
   I'll be waiting for you at Paul's house.

5. Alingi asomba ndako ya Polo.
   He would like to buy Paul's house.

6. Alingi asomba madesu na yo nyonsu.
   He'd like to buy all of your beans.

7. Akoki kosomba madesu na yo nyonsu.
   He can sell all of your beans.

8. Akoki kosomba loso na tata ngai.
   He can sell the rice to my father.

   He couldn't sell the little ones.

10. Akokaki kokanga ya minene te.
    He couldn't wrap up the big ones.

**PATTERN DRILL 2**

1. Lukela ngai misatu ya malamu.
   Pick me out three good ones.

2. Lukela ngai minei ya minene.
   Pick me out four big ones.

3. Lukela ngai mitanu ya mikye.
   Pick me out five little ones.

   Wrap me up five little ones.

5. Osombela ngai mitanu ya mikye.
   Sell me five little ones.

6. Osombela ngai matungulu ya mpata milale.
   Sell me the onion for ten francs.

7. Osombela ngai yango lobi.
   Buy them for me tomorrow.

8. Osombeli ngai yango lobi.
   You bought them for me yesterday.
9. Nalingi nápésa yó yangó lóbi. I'd like to give them to you tomorrow.

10. Nalingi ópésa ngáí fañánga zómi. I want you to give me ten francs.

PATTERN DRILL 3

1. Olía etabe?
   Eq, nálía etabe. Would you care for a banana?
   Yes, I'd like a banana.

2. Otékka madósu to?
   Té, kási natékka malála. Don't you want to sell the beans?
   No, but I'd like to sell the oranges.

3. Oyáa na ngáí na Kisangani?
   Eq, nalingí koyáa na yó na Kisangáni. Do you want to go to Stanleyville with me?
   Yes, I'd like to go to Stanleyville with you.

4. Asómba mbalá?
   Eq, asómba mbalá. Would he like to buy some potatoes?
   Yes, he'd like to buy some potatoes.

7.3 Interrogative relative pronouns

   Lobélá ngáí akéndéki wápi.

   Interrogative relative pronouns occur at the end of the subordinate clause, e.g., /Lobélá ngáí akéndéki wápi/, 'Tell me where he went', literally, 'Tell me he went where.'

7.4 Potential Juncture Before Relative Clauses

   Lobélá ngáí, oyákí áwa ntángo níni.

   There is a potential juncture, i.e., optional pause, between
the main and subordinate clauses. This juncture is marked by a comma /,/. The juncture nearly always occurs if the subordinate clause has more than about seven or eight syllables.

7.5 /-tíkala/ Plus Object

Bakotíkala na lósq na yó.

/-tíkala/ has the particle /na/ if followed by an object, e.g., /Bakotíkala na lósq na yó/, 'They will keep your rice.'

7.6 Please

Sókó olingí, kangá yangó.

/Sókó olingí/, 'If you are willing', is used for politeness, much like English 'Please,', or French 's'il vous plait'.
Unit 8

Basic Sentences

NA POMPI YA ESSENCE AT THE FILLING STATION

-A-

-tiya to put, put in, set, pour in

-tiela, -tiyela, to put for (someone)

-tíla liter

'litre'

'esence'

gasoline

1. Mwána, tiélá ngáí litres Boy, put in five liters of mítánu ya essence, sókó gasoline for me, please. olingí.

-B-

-méyá, loméyá 50-centime piece

2. Pésa mpáta míbalé na méyá. That will be 12.5 francs (12,5F.),

-A-

-mafúta oil, grease, fat

-máí water

3. Na nsima tálá mafúta After that, look at the oil ná máí. and water.

-B-

-ái oh, hey

-síla to finish, be done, finished

4. Ái, mafúta esílí. Hey, there's no oil.
linzanza, ma-
metal box, tin can, iron sheet

5. Tiyá linzanza mókó ya ntúkú mitánu centilitres. Put in a 50-centiliter can.

lisúsu
again, besides, else, other

6. Bóngó na nsíma násála lisúsú níní? What else can I do for you?

-bóngó, -bonga
to be suitable, be in order, come along well

-bóngisa
to put in order, arrange, prepare, repair, straighten, organize

lokolo, ma-
leg, foot; tire, wheel

wáná, wáaná
that; there

-zánga
to be lacking, miss, be without; be absent, skip, miss, omit

mopépé, mi-
air, wind

7. Óbóngisa lokolo wáná ya nsíma ezángí mopépé. Fix that back tire that is flat. Have that back tire fixed that is flat.

-B-

8. Bóngó, okozíla mwáa moké. All right, (but) you will (have to) wait a little while.

-A-

9. Té nakeí, nakozónga na nsíma. No, I'm leaving, I'll come back later.
USEFUL PHRASES

Ayébi kotambioisa mótkua.
Ayébi épái bakoki kozwá ebendé ya mótkua.
Ayébi ndéngé ya kobóngísa mótkua.
Ayébi likambo ntína.
Nasílí kosukola mótkua.
Nasílí nasukoli mótkua.
Naútí kosukola mótkua.
Mësa óyo ebongí na ngáí.
Bilambá óyo bibongí na ngáí.
Kíti óyo ebongí na mësa wáná.
Kangá mótkua.
Kangolá mótkua.
Sembólá Lingála, Lingála likosembola yó.

-tambola

tambwisa

He knows how to drive.
He knows where you can get automobile parts.
He knows how to repair automobiles.
He understands the matter.
I've already washed the car.
I've just now finished washing the car.
I've just this instant finished washing the car.
This table is suitable for me.
These clothes look good on me.
This chair goes well with that table.
Lock the car.
Unlock the car.
Look after Lingala, and Lingala will look after you.
Use good Lingala, and Lingala will serve you well.

to take a walk, travel
move, make progress,
hurry up
to cause to progress,
drive a car, spread
put in motion, start
mótuka, m1-  automobile, truck
epái, b1-  side; part; direction; district; where
ebendé, b1-  piece of metal, iron, coin, metal part
ntína, n-  root; basis; meaning reason, significance, principle
ntína na  because of, on account of, therefore
-sukola  to wash, clean; tell someone off
-úta  to come from, be on the way from
útá (see Note 8.9.)  from, since
mésa  table
kíti  chair
-kangola  to release, let go of, loose, open, unroll, unlock, unfasten
-sémba  to extend, be right, be upright
-sémbola  to put right, straighten up, make vertical
NOTES

8.1 Vowel and Semi-vowel Ellision.

/y/ between vowels is often elided, e.g., /-tīyela/, 'to put for someone,' is often /-tiela/.

/e/ after /i/ is often elided, e.g., /-tīela/ is often /-tīla/.

8.2 Reversive

The reversive extension /-ol-/ has two functions: (1) negative, and (2) directive. (1) The negative reversive indicates the opposite or negative of the verb base, e.g., /-kanga/, 'to fasten', 'lock', 'hold', /-kangola/, 'to unfasten', 'unlock', 'release'. (2) The directive reversive indicates direction away from or off of, e.g., /-kaba/, 'to give', 'state', 'divide', 'shave', /-kabola/, 'to hand out', 'distribute', 'divide up', 'separate' /-palola/, 'to skin', 'peel', 'scrape (off)', /-pasola/ 'to tear (off)', '分开', 'split (off)', 'saw', 'clear (away)', /-papola/, 'to make thinner', 'shave off', 'remove an excess'.

8.3 Reversive Stative

The extension /-w-/ before a vowel or /-u-/ before a consonant marks existence in the reverse state of the base, e.g., /-kangwa/, 'to be open(ed)', 'be unlocked', or /-sembwa/, 'to be in an upright position', -pasuka/, 'be worn out'. Though the reversive stative suffix occurs with many common bases, the student should avoid using stems with it that he has not previously seen because it is incompatible with many bases and occurs with many others only in combination with certain other extensions. This will be studied further in Notes 13.1 and 13.2.
8.4 Derived Stems Without Simple Stems

There are many derived stems, i.e., base plus verbal extensions, for which there is no corresponding simple stem, i.e., base without verbal extension(s), e.g., /-yékola/, 'to study'; */-yéka/ does not occur. Because of this the student should not make analogical back formations of simple stems from derived stems. This is especially true of derived stems with */-ol-/* or */-w-/*.

8.5 Causative

Óbôngísa lokolo wáñá.

The causative extension */-ls-/* means 'to cause to do', 'to make someone do', 'have someone do', e.g., /Óbôngísa lokolo wáñá/, 'Fix that tire'; 'Have that tire fixed'; 'Make someone fix that tire'.

When */-ls-/* occurs after a reversible extension, some stems take */-ol-/* as the reversible, others take */-w-/*, and others take both with different meanings, e.g., */-támbwísa/, 'to drive a car', but */-támbolísa/, 'to take a person for a walk'. In general, */-ol-/* is used with animate objects and */-w-/* is used with inanimate objects, but there are many exceptions.

8.6 Degree of Immediate Past

In Note 2.5. the immediate past was characterized as something that has 'just' happened, but it was also shown that the period of time covered by the immediate past is often somewhat longer than what we mean in English by 'just' happened, e.g., /Nasílí kosukola mótku/, 'I've already washed the car'; 'I've just washed the car'. This could even mean several days ago. To indicate that something has been done in the last five or ten minutes or so, one uses /Nasílí nasukóli mótku/, I've just now finished washing the car'. But to indicate even more immediateness, one uses /Naútí kosukola mótku/, 'I've just this instant finished
washing the car', literally 'I have come from washing the car', i.e., 'the last thing I did before the moment of speaking was wash the car'.

8.7 Proverb Concordance

Sémbólá Lingála, Lingála likosémbola yô.

Proverbs are a literary form very highly regarded in Africa. In Lingála proverbs, subject prefixes to the verb take the literary style of prefix concordances, e.g., in the proverb above the literary form /likosémbola/ occurs and not the usual form /èkosémbola/. Compare Note 4.2.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1**

1. Na nsima tálá mafúta. After that, look at the oil.
3. Na liboso mwána atí linzanza mókô ya ntukù mítanu ya mafúta. Before that, the boy put in a 50-centiliter can of oil.
4. Nalobèlí mwána átiya linzanza mókô ya ntukù mítanu centrilitre ya mafúta. I told the boy to put in a 50-centiliter can of oil.
5. Nalobèlí mwána átiya litres ntukù mìbalè ya essence. I told the boy to put in twenty liters of gasoline.
7. Motu wàna alingí bóbongísela yé lokolo ya môtuka. That man wants to have his tire fixed.
8. Tatà na yé alingí bóbongísela yé lokolo ya môtuka. His father wants to have his tire repaired.
9. Tatá na yé alingí názila yé. His father wants me to wait for him.

10. Mwásí na ngáí alingí názila ye. My wife wants me to wait for her.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

Answer the questions according to the cues.

1. Okendéki ntingo níni? What time did you leave?
   Naki ndéki na ngonga ya mënë. I left at four o'clock.

2. Osálaka níni na ntango? What do you do in the morning?
   Nayekalaka na ntango. I study mornings.

3. Oyakí mokolo níni na Leó? When did you arrive in Leopoldville?
   Nayaki na mpošo elekí. I arrived last week.

4. Násala níni na nsosó óyo etikáli? What should I do with the rest of the chicken?
   Pesá yé nsosó óyo etikáli. Give him the rest of the chicken.

5. Bozalakí koloba níni? What were you talking about?
   Tozalakí koloba likambo ya basí. We are talking about women.

6. Balíngi litres bóni ya essence? How many liters of gasoline do they want?
   Balíngi litres ntúkí misátu ya essence. They want thirty liters of gasoline.

7. Falanga bóni apésí na mwásí? How many francs did he give the woman?
Apési yé nkámá mòkó.

He gave her one hundred.

8. Otíki lokolo na mótuka wápí?
   Natíki yángó na esíká ya kotéka essence.
   I left it at the filling station.

9. Obándí mosálá?
   Nabándí mosálá útá ngonga ya mòkó.
   I started working at one o'clock.
   I have been working since one o'clock.

10. Obándí mosálá ntángu níni?
    Nabándí mosálá útá ngonga mòkó.
    I have been working for one hour.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Natiísí yé mafúta na mótuka.
   I had him put some oil in the car.

2. Natiísí yé litres ntúku míšátu ya essence.
   I had him put in thirty litres of gasoline.

3. Natiísí yé lokolo ya síka na mótuka.
   I had him put a new tire on my car.

4. Tosóbákí lokolo ya síka na mótuka.
   We bought a new tire for the car.

5. Tosóbákí makolo na mótuka.
   We bought some tires for the car.

6. Abongiséllákí bísiú makolo ya mótuka.
   He repaired the tires for us.

7. Abongiséllákí bísiú mótuka ntángu tozalákí koméla Coca-Cola.
   He repaired the car for us while we were drinking a Coke.
8. Abongiséláki bíšú mótuka
   ntángu tozálákí kozila.
   He repaired the car for us
   while we were waiting.

9. Abongiséláki bíšú mótuka
   ntángu tozálákí koliá mìdí.
   He repaired the car for us
   while we had lunch.

10. Abongiséláki bíšú mótuka
    ntángu mbúla ezalákí
    konjìko.
    He repaired the car for us
    while it was raining.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Alobáki na mwána áloba
   lisúsú.
   She told the child to say it
   again.

2. Alobáki na mwána ákanga
   ndáko.
   She told the child to close
   the door.

3. Akangísákí ndáko na mwána.
   She had the child close the
   door. She had the door
   closed by the child.

4. Akangísákí búuku na bána.
   She had the children close
   their books.

5. Bapesákí búuku na bána.
   They gave the children some
   books.

6. Bapesákí bíní miníti zómi
   mpó na kosílísíá mosálá.
   They gave you ten minutes to
   finish the job.

7. Bapesákí ngáí mótuka
   mosúsú ya kotambwísa.
   They gave me another car to
   drive.

8. Nalingí mótuka mosúsú ya
   kotambwísa.
   I need another car to drive.

9. Nalingí essence na línzanza
    óyo.
   I want some gasoline in this
   can.

10. Tíéla ngáí litres zómi ya
    essence na lízanza óyo.
    Put ten liters of gasoline in
    this can for me.
1. Nasílí kobóngisela mobáli óyo lokolo ya mótkuk.
   I've already repaired the tire for the man.
2. Nasílí nabóngiséli mobáli óyo lokolo ya mótkuk.
   I've just now finished repairing the tire for the man.
3. Nautí kobóngisela mobáli óyo lokolo ya mótkuk.
   I've just this instant finished repairing the tire for the man.
4. Nautí kotíya litres mítánu ya essence na mótkuk.
   I've just this instant finished putting five liters of gasoline in the car.
5. Nasílí kotíya litres mítánu ya essence na mótkuk.
   I've already put five liters of gasoline in the car.
   I've just now put five liters of gasoline in the car.
7. Nasílí natálí mafúta na mít.
   I've just now looked at the oil and water.
   I've already looked at the oil and the water.
   I've just this instant looked at the oil and the water.
    I've just this instant finished washing the car.

PATTERN DRILL 1

1. Ayébi kobóngisa mótkuk.
   He knows how to repair cars.
2. Ayébi elóko akosála.
   He knows what to do.
3. Ayébi kotámbwisa mótkuk.
   He knows how to drive.
5. Ayébé épái bakókí kozwá ebendé yá mótnuka. He knows where to get parts for automobiles.
6. Ayébé mọkọlọ níní akozónga na Leó. He knows what day she returns to Leopoldville.
7. Ayébé mpó na níní batu batíkí mósálá. He knows why the men stopped working.
8. Ayébé ntángu níní bakeí. He knows when they left.
9. Ayébé ndéngé níní bakókí kofungóla mọnọkọ yá ndáko. He know how to unlock the door.
10. Ayébé na ngonga bóní bakókí kosílísá mósálá. He knows how fast it can be done.
11. Ayébé likambo ntína. He comprehends the problem.

8.8 Non-applicative Verbs With Two Objects.
Pesá yé nsóso ọyọ etíkáli.

Certain verbs, such as /pesá/, 'to give', take two objects even though the verb doesn't have the applicative extension, e.g., /Pesá yé nsóso ọyọ etíkáli/, 'Give him the rest of the chicken'.

8.9 Functionally-specialized Use of Imperative.
Nabándí mósálá útá ngonga yá mọkọ.

Certain verbs indicating stopping, starting, origin, or destination, are used in the imperative to mark the beginning or end of an interval of time or space, e.g., the sentence above, 'I have been working since one o'clock', literally, 'I started working begin(ning) one o'clock'.

87
Unit 9

Basic Sentences

-A-
1. Olingí mosálá?
   Are you looking for work?

-B-
2. Nalingí.
   I am.

-A-
3. Oyébi mosálá níni?
   What do you know how to do?

-B-
- lòngoma
   to iron, press

4. Kolámba, kobóngisa ndákó, Cooking, house work, washing, kosukola bilambá, mpé and ironing.
   kongoma.

-A-
5. Malámu, mosálá na yó
   Fine, your job (will be) the kosukola bilambá.
   laundry.

6. Nakopésa yó na sánzá I will give you one thousand nkóto mökó. Olingí?
   francs per month. Is that satisfactory?

-B-
7. Elekí moké, bakísá lisúsu That's too little, add three nkámá misátu.
   hundred francs more.

8. Sökó oshálí malámu, bóongó If you do good work, I'll nakobákísa.
   increase you.

9. Olingí kobanda mosálá lóbí?
   Do you want to start to work tomorrow?
BASIC COURSE

UNIT 9

10. Té, kási nalingí kobanda mosálá lóbí ekoyáa.
    No, but I want to start the day after tomorrow.

11. Malámu, mosálá na yó ekozala útá ngonga ya nsambo ya ntôngó, tée na ngonga ya mítanu ya mpókwa.
    Good, your working hours will be from 7:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M.

    Don't get in the habit of being late.

13. Té, nakoyáa na ntángu malámu.
    No, I won't. I'll be on time.

USEFUL PHRASES

Limbisá ngái.
Lekísá ngái.
Látá bilambá mpémbé.
Longólá bilambá mbíndu na nzótu.
Longwá!
Tandá mbétu.
Tandá másá.
Sukólá basání.
Sukólá tásí na sání ya tásí.
Sukólá kópó na lútu.

Excuse me. Pardon me.
Let me pass. Let me by.
Put on clean clothes.
Take off your dirty clothes.
Scram! Get lost!
Make the bed.
Set the table.
Wash the dishes.
Wash the cup and saucer.
Wash the glass and spoon.
Sukólá mbé11, kánya, na nkelé.
Wash the knives, forks, and spoons.

Kitisélé ngaí sandúku na nsé.
Send my suitcase down.

Mémélé ngaí sandúku na nsé.
Bring my suitcase down.

Mémélé ngaí sandúku na likoló.
Bring my suitcase up.

Butisélé ngaí sandúku na likoló.
Send my suitcase up.

Butisélé ngaí sumé na sabón1.
Send me up some towels and soap.

Koméla likányá té.
No smoking.

Kokóta té.
Do not enter.

-límbísa
-łóta
nzótu, nzóto, n-
tanda
mésa
mbétu, mbéto, m-
sání, ba-
tási (tasse)
kópo
lútu
mbélí
kánya, nkánya, (n-)
lokelé, n-
kíta
sandúku, (ba-)
nsé, n-
to forgive, pardon, excuse
to dress, put on clothes
body
to spread, stretch out
table
bed, pallet
dish, bowl, plate, basin
cup
glass, tumbler, cup
spoon
knife
fork
spoon
to go/come down, descend;
decrease, diminish
box, chest, trunk, suitcase,
earth, world; bottom; down,
under, beneath
-mëmë  
  to carry, transport
-buta  
  to rise, ascend, climb
  (up), creep (up), go
  up, increase

sumé (essuie-main)  
  towel, wash cloth
sabóní (savon)  
  soap
likáyá, ma-  
  tobacco, cigarette, cigar

NOTES

9.1 Comparison of Intensity

The 'comparison' of intensity, i.e., 'to be very', 'to be too', is expressed by the verb /-leka/, e.g., /Elekí moká/, 'It is too little', 'It's very small', literally 'It surpasses smallness'. See also Note 15.3.

9.2 Definite Condition

Sókó osáli malámú, nakobákísa.

If a proposition is true or affirmed to be true, the if-clause has the immediate past and the result clause the future, e.g., /Sókó osáli malámú nakobákísa/, 'If you do good work, (then it is certain that) I'll raise your pay'.

9.3 General Prohibitions

Kokómaka nsíma ya ntángu té.
  Komála likáyá té.

The combination of an infinitive plus /té/ is used for general prohibitions, e.g., /Komála likáyá té/, 'No smoking'.
9.4 Special Meanings of Derived Stems

okoki kotékisa yangó

Derived stems often have a specialized meaning that cannot be guessed and therefore must be learned as a vocabulary item, e.g., /kotékisa/, 'to resell at a profit', as in /Sókí obongísí ndáko óyo, okoki kotékisa yangó/, 'If you have this house repaired, you can resell it at a profit'.

9.5 /téé/ Followed by /na/

téé na ngonga ya mítánu ya mpókwa

When preceding a temporal phrase, /téé/ is followed by /na/, as in the phrase above, 'until 5:00 P.M.'

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Osukóláki lisúsú bìlambá?
   Have you washed the clothes yet?

2. Nasílí nasukóláki bìlambá.
   I have just finished washing the clothes.

3. Nasílí kobóngísí ndáko.
   I've already straightened up the house.

4. Lobélá yé ábongísí ndáko.
   Tell him to straighten up the house.

5. Lobélá yé ángoma bìlambá sìka óyo.
   Tell him to press the clothes right away.

   Ask him if he can press the clothes right away.

7. Lobá na yé sòkó alingí koyáá léló na mpókwa.
   Ask him if he can come this afternoon.
8. Oyébi sókó akoyáa lélé
    na mpókwa?

9. Oyébi sókó azalí lisúsu na
    ndáko na yé?

10. Ayebl tê, sókó azalí lisúsu
    na ndáko na yé.

Do you know if he can come
this afternoon?

Do you know if he is home yet?

He doesn't know if he is still
home.

PATTERN DRILL 1

1. Sókó oyíi lélé, nakopésa
    yó nkáma mókó.

2. Sókí osómí mókó, nakopésa
    yó nkáma mókó.

3. Sókí osómí mókó, bakó-
    bongísa mosúsu.

4. Sókí obongísi ndáko óyo,
    bakobongísa mosúsu.

5. Sókí obongísi ndáko óyo,
    okókó kotékísa yango.

6. Sókó ozálí sánzá mókó,
    okókó kotékísa yango.

7. Sókí ozálí sánzá mókó,
    okókóndé na Léó.

8. Sókí ozálí na nkóto mókó,
    okókóndé na Léó.

9. Sókí ozálí na nkóto mókó,
    okókí kosómíba bilamba.

10. Sókó okeí na Léó, okókí
    kosómíba bilamba.

If you come today, I'll give
you one hundred francs.

If you buy one, I'll give you
one hundred francs.

If you buy one, I'll have the
other repaired.

If you have this house repaired,
they will repair the other one.

If you have this house repaired,
you can resell it at a profit.

If you wait a month, you can
sell them at a profit.

If you wait a month, you can
go to Leopoldville.

If you have a thousand francs,
you can go to Leopoldville.

If you have a thousand francs,
you can buy some clothes.

If you go to Leopoldville, you
can buy some clothes.
1. Mosálá na bísu esílaka na ngonga ya mitánu ya mpókwa. We get off from work at 5:00 P.M.

2. Mosálá na bísu esílí na ntángu malámu. We finished our work early.

3. Tokómí na ndáko na ntángu malámu. We arrived home early.

4. Tokómí na ndáko libosó mbúla ébanda konóko. We arrived home before it started to rain.

5. Tosílisákí kosomba bilóko libosó mbúla ébanda konóko. We finished shopping before it started to rain.

6. Tosílisákí kosomba bilóko mpé tokei na ndáko. We finished shopping and went home.

7. Mosálá ekokákí na bísu nyónso té ntína na yangó tokei na ndáko. There weren't enough jobs for all of us, and therefore we went home.

8. Mosálá elekákí makásí ntína na yangó tokei na ndáko. The work was too hard, and because of that we came home.

9. Mosálá elekákí makásí ntángu ya komela likáyá ezalákí té. The work is so hard that there isn't (even) time to smoke.

10. Mosálá elekákí makásí ntángu ya kolia ezalákí té. There's so much work that there isn't (even) time to eat.
1. **GRAMMmatical DRILLS 3**

1. Bói akangóléléí ngaí ndáko. The houseboy opened the door for me.
2. Bói asukóléléí ngaí bilambá. The houseboy washed my clothes.
3. Nasukóléléísí bóí bilambá. I had the boy wash my clothes.
4. Nasukóléléísí bóí bilambá ya mbétu. I had the boy wash the sheets.
5. Angómísélí bóí bilambá ya mbétu. She had the boy iron the sheets.
6. Angómísélí ye elambá ya mésa. She had him iron the tablecloth.
7. Alongólákí elambá ya mésa. She put away the table cloth.
8. Alongólákí basáí ya sika. She put away the new dishes.
9. Azóngísákí basáí ya sika. She put back the new dishes.
10. Akamátákí basáí ya sika. She got out the new dishes.

**GRAMMmatical DRILL 4**

1. Longólísá bána bilambá mbíndu na nzótú. Have the children take off their dirty clothes.
2. Longólísá bána bilambá mpémbé na nzótú. Have the children take off their clean clothes.
3. Látisá bána bilambá mpémbé. Have the children put on their clean clothes.
4. Látisá mamá mpêté na ye. Have mother wear her ring.
7. Butisélá ngái sandúku na likoló.  
   Have my suitcase brought up.

8. Butisélá ngái sumé na sabóni.  
   Send me some towels and soap.

   Bring me some towels and soap.

10. Kitisélá ngái sumé na sabóni na nsé.  
    Send me down some towels and soap.

**PATTERN DRILL 2**

1. Naútí (na) mosálá.  
   I'm just returning from work.
   I'm on my home from work.
   I've just returned from work.

2. Naútí kosalá.  
   I've just returned from work.

   I've just come from Leopoldville.
   I'm on my way from Leopoldville.

   I've arrived from Leopoldville.
   I've come from Leopoldville.

5. Nakeí (na) Kínsásá.  
   I'm leaving for Leopoldville.
   I'm on the way to Leopoldville.
   I'm going to Leopoldville.

**PATTERN DRILL 3**

1. Nalingí bólongola mafúta ya libosó bótiya ya sika.  
   I want the oil changed.

2. Nalingí kotambolisa mwána na ngái ya mobálí.  
   I want to take my son for a walk.
3. Nalingi kowendé kotambilala na mótuka. I want to go for a drive.


5. Nalingi motu mókó ásukola mótuka. I want someone to wash my car.

9.6 /libosó/ Plus Subjunctive

Tokómi na ndáko libosó mbúla ébanda konókó.

When nouns such as /libosó/, 'front', are used to introduce temporal clauses, the verb of the temporal clause is in the subjunctive, as in the sentence above, 'We arrived home before it started rain'.
Unit 10

Basic Sentences

-A-
1. Alô! (allô) Hello.

-B-
2. Alô, nàni wàna? Hello, who's speaking?

-A-
3. Ngaî, Bonifâsî. This is Boniface.

-B-
4. Dî, Bonifâsî, olingî nîni? Hi, Boniface, what do you want?

-A-
tînda to send, order, command

5. Nalingî ótîndela ngaî I'd like you to send me your
bûuku na yô ya Lingâla. Lingala book.

-B-
6. Boongó ya yô, otîkî wápi? Where did you leave yours?

-A-
bósana to forget; be mistaken, make a mistake

kelâsî (classe) class, classroom, school

7. Nabósâni yangó na kelâsî. I forgot and left it in the classroom.
   -B-  
   Boni, I'll send it to you by my little brother.

   -A-  
   Thanks.

10. Likambo té.  
    -B-  
    Don't mention it.

11. Ëë, kokanga naínu té!  
    -A-  
    Hey, don't hang up yet!

12. Okendo wápi lólo na mpokwa?  
    -B-  
    Where are you planning on going this evening?

   -kana  
   to resolve, intend, promise, threaten

   -kanisa  
   to think, reflect,

   sinemá (cinéma)  
   movies

13. Nakanisi (te) nakokendo na sinemá lólo na mpokwa.  
    -B-  
    I think I'll go to the movies this evening.

14. Olingi tokendo bisú míbalé?  
    -B-  
    Would you like for me to go with you?

   -bima  
   to go out, come out, go for a walk, emerge

15. Ëë, nalíngi, nakobima na ngonga ya mwambí.  
    -A-  
    Yes, of course, I'm leaving at eight o'clock.

USEFUL PHRASES

Yóká (na) téléphone. Answer the phone.
Kangá téléphone. Hang up the phone.
Zóngisá (na) téléphone. Hang up the phone.
Béngá yé na téléphone. Call him up.
Baakobéngá yó na téléphone. You're wanted on the phone.
Bétélé yé singa. Call him up.
Téléphone ezalí kobéte. The telephone is ringing.
Mondélé abéti ngonga. The European rang the bell.
Mondélé azalí kobéte masíni. The European is typing.
Mondélé azalí kobéte mabóko. The European is clapping his hands.
Mondélé azalí kobéte mái. The European is swimming.
Mondélé azalí kobéte bondiki. The European is shooting a gun.
Nkombó na yó nání? What's your name?
Nkombó na ngáí Ngói. My name is Ngói.
Bapesí yé Monkomolài. They nicknamed him Big Mouth.

téléphon (téléphone)
-bénga

-béte, -béta

Singa cord, rope, wire, cable, band, belt
BASIC COURSE
UNIT 10

mondélé, mi-
masini (machine)

white man, European
machine, mechanical
instrument, train
gun, rifle
name, honor, reputation
long, large, deep, high

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Natíndí mwána mpó na búuku.
   I sent the boy for the book.

2. Natíndí búuku na mwána.
   I sent the book to the boy.

3. Nakotíndela yó búuku na mwána.
   I'll send the book to you by the boy.

   I'll send the book to you in the morning.

   I sent the book to you yesterday morning.

   I sent you the onions yesterday.

7. Natíndákí yó osómbela ngái matungúlu lóbí.
   I sent you to buy me some onions yesterday.

   I sent you to buy a can of meat for me yesterday.

   He will buy a can of meat for her.

10. Akosómbela yé ndáko.
    He will buy the house for her.

101
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nabósání ndáko na yé.
   I've forgotten where his house is located.
   I've forgotten who he is.
3. Nabósání ntángu níni tokómí?
   I forgot what time it is.
   I've forgotten his name.
5. Nabósání bána na yé.
   I forgot about his children.
   I've forgotten what language he speaks.
7. Nabósání mosálá na yé.
   I've forgotten what he does (for a living).
8. Nabósání nókó na yé.
   I've forgotten who his uncle is.
   I've forgotten where I left my book.
    I've forgotten where he went.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nakobíma na ngonga ya motóba.
   I'm going out at six o'clock.
2. Mwási na ngáí akokóma na ngonga ya motóba.
   My wife will arrive at six o'clock.
3. Mwási na ngáí akokóma na Leó lëló na mpókwa.
   My wife will arrive in Leopoldville this evening.
4. Bakotíka Leó lëló na mpókwa.
   We will leave Leopoldville this evening. (impersonal we)
5. Bakotíka Brazzaville na ngonga ya mökó na ntóngó.
   We will leave Brazzaville at 11:00 A.M. (impersonal we)
6. **Bána na ngaí bazalákí na** Brazzaville na ngonga ya mökó na ntóngó.

7. **Bána na ngaí bazalákí kokèndé ntángo nakómákí.**

8. **Bakangákí ndáko ntángo nakómákí.**

9. **Bakangákí ndáko mpé motu azalákí tè.**

10. **Natúní kásí motu azalákí tè.**

**My children were at Brazzaville at 1:00 A.M.**

**My children were leaving when I arrived.**

**The house was locked up when I arrived.**

**The house was locked and no one was there.**

**I called out, but no one was there.**

**PATTERN DRILL 1**

1. **Sókó oyákí léló, mbèlé napésákí yò nkáma mòkó.**

   If you had come today, I would have given you a thousand francs.

2. **Sókí osómbákí mòkó, mbèlé napésákí yò nkáma mòkó.**

   If you had bought one, I would have given you a thousand francs.

3. **Sókí osómbákí mòkó, mbèlé babongísákí mosúsù.**

   If you had bought one, they would have had the other repaired.

4. **Sókí obongísákí ndáko óyo, mbèlé babongísákí mosúsù.**

   If you had had this house repaired, they would have repaired the other one.

5. **Sókí obongísákí ndáko óyo, mbèlé okokákí kotèkísa yàngó.**

   If you had had this house repaired, you could have sold it at a profit.

6. **Sókó ozilákí sánzá mòkó, mbèlé okokákí kotèkísa yàngó.**

   If you had waited a month, you would have been able to sell it at a profit.
7. Sokó ozilákí sánsá mókó, mbele okendékí na Kinsásá. If you had waited a month, you could have gone to Leopoldville.

8. Sokó ozilákí na nkótó mókó, mbele okendékí na Kinsásá. If you had had a thousand francs, you could have gone to Leopoldville.

9. Sokó ozilákí na nkótó mókó, mbele okokákí kosomba bilambá. If you had had a thousand francs, you could have bought some clothes.

10. Sokó okendékí na Kinsásá mbele okokákí kosomba bilambá. If you had gone to Leopoldville, you could have bought some clothes.

PATTERN DRILL 2

1. Moto mókó ayákí kolúka yó na midí. Someone came looking for you at lunchtime.


3. Moto mókó akobina na ngonga ya motobá. Someone is going out at six o'clock.

4. Moto mókó atindélékí yó bondóki. Someone sent you a rifle.

5. Moto mókó abósáni búuku na yé ya Lingála. Someone has forgotten his Lingala book.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Luká numeró na bangó ya télèfón. Look up their phone number.

2. Lukéá ngái numeró na bangó ya télèfón. Look up their phone number for me.
3. Lukélisá yé numeró ya bangó ya télófón.
Have her look up their phone number.

4. Lukélisá yé numeró ya bangó ya télófón mpó na ngáí.
Have her look up their phone number for me.

5. Lukélisá yé buuku ya télófón mpó na ngáí.
Have her look for the phonebook for me.

PATTERN DRILL 3

1. Ndéngé na yé ya kolía ezalí malámu.
He has good table manners.

2. Ndéngé na yé ya koláta bilambá ezalí malámu.
He always looks nicely dressed.

3. Ndéngé na yé ya koloba ezalí malámu.
His manner of speaking is polite and easy to understand.

He always does a good job.

5. Ndéngé na yé ya kotámbola ezalí malámu.
He walks well.

PATTERN DRILL 4

1. Nakanísí akoyáa.
I think he's coming.

2. Nakanísí akoyáa té.
I think he's not coming.

3. Nakanísí té akoyáa.
I don't think he's coming.

I think that he's coming.

5. Nakanísí té te akoyáa.
I don't think that he's coming.
10.1 Hypothetical Supposition.

*Sókó oyákí léló, mbélé napésákí yó nkámá mőkő.*

Hypothetical supposition or contrary-to-fact condition is expressed by the recent past in both clauses and by the particle /mbélé/ at the beginning of the main clause, e.g., /Sókó oyákí léló, mbélé napésákí yó nkámá mőkó/, 'If you had come today, I would have given you a thousand francs.'

In the various Lingala dialects, a number of other particles are used in the same way as described above for /mbélé/, e.g., /tikí/, /tike/, /ka/, /kana/, /énte/, /nde/, /mbè/.

10.2 'Passive' Plural

Bakotíka Leó léló na mpókwa.

The third person plural besides expressing what is commonly done (Note 5.9) also is used like impersonal or editorial we in English, e.g., /Bakotíka Leó léló na mpókwa/, literally and often, 'They will leave Leopoldville this evening', but it is also often used much like English, 'We, i.e., that group of passengers, or my plane, etc., will leave Leopoldville this evening.'

10.3 Future in Non-initial and Subordinate Clauses.

Nakanísí akoyáa.

Verbs in non-initial and subordinate clauses, which refer to a future time, are in the future tense, e.g., /Nakanísí akoyáa/, 'I think he's coming', literally, 'I think he will come'. Speakers of English often make the error of using a present tense in such clauses in Lingala.
Unit 11

Basic Sentences

-A-

-béle

1. Ôokobéle wápi?

Where do you hurt?

to hurt, suffer, be sick

-B-

-lála

mónganga, mí-

to sleep, lie down;
stay, remain

physician, European

doctor

2. Na butú nalálí té, mónganga.

I didn't sleep all night, doctor.

mutú, motú, motó, mô-

head; bunch

libumu, ma-

stomach, belly, womb

mobimba, mô-

entire, whole

3. Mutú, libumu, nzótú

mobimba mpásí.

My head, stomach, and whole

body hurts.

-A-

móto

4. Ôokoyóka nzótú móto?

Do you have a fever?

fire, hot

-B-

wápi

by no means, no, nothing

5. Náyéba wápi, mónganga.

How could I know, doctor?

6. Nazalí na thermomètre té

na ndáko.

I don't have a thermometer at

home.
UNIT 11

LINGALA

-A-

simísi (chemise)  
sírt

7. Longóla naíno simísi na yó.  
Take off your shirt first.

8. Tíyá thermodétre óyo na mònko.  
Put this thermometer in your mouth.

-B-

O.K., doctor.

-A-

fiéfélé, fiévélé,  
fever  
(fiévre)

10. Óo, ozalí na fiéfélé, Paul.  
Oh, you have a fever, Paul.

-B-

-sálisa  
to help, take care of, employ, instruct

kó  
indeed, come on! go ahead!

11. Sálísa ngaí kó mónganga.  
Help me, doctor.

-A-

12. Elókó níni olíákí toó  
omélákí lóbí?  
What did you eat or drink yesterday?

-B-

káka  
only, alone

tíí  
tea

límpa, ma-  
bread, piece of bread

Only some tea and bread.

108
14. Fi-ofelw yangó ezali makasi?
Is my fever very high?
(The fever, (it is very high?)

-A-
mpenza
really, truly, only,
completely, alone

15. Tè, mpenza tè.
kinini (quinine)

16. Kamata kinini oyo, melá
mibalé sika oyo, mibalé
mosusu 1bosó ya kolala.
Take two of these quinine
pills right away and two
before going to bed.

-B-

17. Melesi, monganga.
Thanks, doctor.

-A-
bika
to recover, live,
be recued

18. Skoki lobi obiki te,
zonga awa.
If you have not recovered by
tomorrow, come back.

USEFUL PHRASES

Lelo mokolo nini?
What day is it?

Lelo mokolo ya lomingo.
Today is Sunday.

Lelo mokolo ya eyenga.
Today is Sunday.

Lelo mokolo ya mosala moko.
Today is Monday.

Lelo mokolo ya mosala mibalé.
Today is Tuesday.

Lelo mokolo ya mosala misatu.
Today is Wednesday.

Lelo mokolo la mosala mine1.
Today is Thursday.
Lélé m'okolo ya mosála mitánu.  
Lélé m'okolo ya mpósó.  
Mpósó eleki nazaláki na Brazzaville.  
Na nsúka ya mpósó óyo nakokendì mobémbo na Mpóto.  
Naakolengelì mobémbo na ntángo ya elanga.  
Abélí.  
Azalí na malálí.  
Nazokí na mokôngo.  
Nazokí na linu.  
Nazokí na mosail.  
Azalí kosónó bilambá.  
Azalí kosónó mopila.  
Azalí kosónó pataló.  
Azalí kosónó kalesó.  
Azalí komeka kazáka.  
Azalí komeka ekóti.  
Azalí komeka sosétì.  
Azalí komeka sapáto.

lomíngó  
eyenga  
nsúka, n-  
-bémbo

Today is Friday.  
Today is Saturday.  
I spent last weekend at Brazzaville.  
This weekend I am going on a trip to Europe.  
I'm getting ready for a trip during the dry season.  
He's sick. He's gotten sick.  
He's sick.  
I've injured my back.  
I've injured a tooth.  
I've injured my finger.  
She's making clothes.  
She's making an undershirt.  
She's making some trousers.  
She's making some shorts.  
He's trying on a coat.  
He's trying on a hat.  
He's trying on some socks.  
He's trying on shoes.

Sunday  
festival, feast day;  
Sunday, weekend  
end, termination  
to travel  
trip, journey
Mpótó, Mpútú (Portugal)  
-łęngélę  
elanga  
malálí, malálí (maladie)  
-zoka  
mosal, m1-  
-sońo  
mompíla, m1-  
pataló (pantalon)  
-meka  
kazáka  
ekóti, bi-  
sosétí (chaussette)  
sapáto, sapáta

Europe  
to prepare, get ready  
field, garden; dry season, year  
ilness, sickness  
to be injured, be touched  
finger, toe  
to sew, make clothes  
undershirt, t-shirt, vest, sweater  
shorts, underwear  
to measure, weigh, try (out), test  
coat, jacket, vest  
(man's) hat  
sock, stocking  
shoe(s)

NOTES

11.1 Emphatic /wá́pí/

Náyéba wá́pí?

/wá́pí/, 'where', plus the subjunctive expresses emphatic denial of the ability and/or opportunity to do something, e.g., /náyéba wá́pí?/, 'How could I know (if)...?', 'I don't knew whether or not...', 'I don't know anything at all about...'.

11.2 Spelling of /óö/

/óö/ is /oh/.
Lexical Drill 1

1. Naákoyóka mutú mpásí. I have a headache.
2. Naákoyóka lumumu mpásí. I have a stomach ache.
3. Naákoyóka mokongo mpásí. I have a backache.
4. Naákoyóka loboko mpásí. I have a pain in my hand.
5. Naákoyóka línu mpásí. I have a toothache.

Lexical Drill 2

1. Naákobelé na mutú. I have a headache.
2. Naákobelé na lumumu. I have a stomach ache.
3. Naákobelé na mokongo. I have a backache.
4. Naákobelé na loboko. I have a pain in my hand.
5. Naákobelé na línu. I have a toothache.

Lexical Drill 3

1. Nasálaka na butú. I work at night.
2. Nasálaka na móí. I work during the day.
3. Nasálaka na ntóngó. I work in the morning.
4. Nasálaka na mpókwa. I work in the afternoon.
5. Nasálaka na ntángu ya mbúla. I work during the rainy season.
6. Nasálaka na ntángu ya elanga. I work during the dry season.
Lexical Drill 4

1. Longolá simísi.        Take off your shirt.
2. Longolá sapáto.        Take off your shoes.
3. Longolá pataló.        Take off your trousers.
4. Longolá kazáka.        Take off your coat.
5. Longolá kazáka ya mbúla. Take off your raincoat.

Lexical Drill 5

5. Zongisá cravate.       Put on your tie.

Grammatical Drill 1

1. Pésá ngaí nsósó mobimba. Give me a whole chicken.
2. Ókolámbo léló na midí nsósó mobimba. Today for lunch fix a whole chicken.
3. Ókolámbo nsósó mobimba léló na midí. Fix a whole chicken for lunch today.
4. Ókolámbo tii mpó na mänganga. Fix some tea for the doctor.
5. Kendé kosómба tii mpó na mänganga. Go buy some tea for the doctor.

Grammatical Drill 2

1. Ayákí ntángo nazalákí kolála. He arrived while I was asleep.
2. Ayákí ntángo nazalákí kolíía. He came while I was eating.
3. Alongolaki bilamba na ye ntango nazalaki kolia. He undressed while I was eating.

4. Alongolaki bilamba na ye ntango azalaki liboso ya mônganga. He undressed when he was in with the doctor.

5. Azalaki na mpasi ntango azalaki liboso ya mônganga. He was suffering when he was in with the doctor.

6. Azalaki na mpasi ntango akendaki epai ya mônganga. He was sick when he went to the doctor's.

7. Azalaki na fiseré ntango akendaki epai ya mônganga. He had a fever when he went to the doctor's.

8. Azalaki na fiseré ntango namonaki ye. He had a fever when I saw him.

9. Namonaki ye ntango azalaki kosalisasa tatá na ye. I saw him while he was taking care of his father.

10. Natindelaki ye mampa ntango azalaki kosalisasa tatá na ye. I sent him some bread during the time he was caring for his father.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Sokó simisi na ngái eyáki mbíndu té, kana tokei Kisanganí bisú mibalé. If my shirt hadn't got dirty, then the two of us would go to Stanleyville.

2. Sokó simisi na ngái eyáki mbíndu té, kana nakei kotála mônganga. If my shirt hadn't got dirty, I would go see the doctor.

3. Sokó nazalaki na maláli kana nakei kotála mônganga. If I were sick, I would go see the doctor.

4. Sokó nazalaki na maláli kana nakendéki kotála mônganga. If I had been sick, I would have gone to see the doctor.
5. Sóko nabikáki té, kana nakendéki kotála mónganga. If I hadn't got better, I would have gone to the doctor.

6. Sóko nabikáki té, mbe nakei kotála mónganga. If I hadn't got better, I would go to see the doctor.

7. Sóko nazaláki na fívelé, mbe nakei kotála mónganga. If I had a fever, I would go see the doctor.

8. Sóko nazaláki na fívelé, mbe naláli. If I had a fever, I'd go to bed.

9. Sóko nbleléki, mbe naláli. If I were sick, I'd go to bed.

10. Sóko nbleléki, mbe namélé til ya moto. If I were sick, I'd drink some hot tea.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3**

1. Tínda motu mókó ábëngela ngái mónganga. Send someone to get me a doctor.

2. Lobélá ye ákendé kotála mónganga. Tell him to go see the doctor.

3. Lobélá ye ábëngela ngái bangó na telefon. Tell her to get them on the phone for me.

4. Natúnákí ye ábëngela ngái bangó na telefon. I asked her to get them on the phone for me.

5. Natúnákí ye alongolaсимиси na ye. I asked him to take off his shirt.

6. Balingí alongola симиси na ye. They wanted him to take off his shirt.

7. Balingí koyéba elóko ní ni náléi too namélí leló. They wanted to know what I had eaten and drunk today.

8. Mónganga alongí koyéba elóko ní ni náléi too namélí leló. The doctor wanted to know what I had eaten or drunk today.
9. Monganga alingi átiya
thermomètre óyo na
monoko.
The doctor wanted me to put the thermometer in my mouth.

10. Ntina níni bolingi átiya
thermomètre óyo na
monoko?
Why do you want me to put the thermometer in my mouth?
Unit 12

Basic Sentences

-A-
-konza
mokonzi, ba-

wa

to rule, manage
chief, king, boss, supervisor
of, belonging to, at, from

1. Alobé, óyo azalí mokonzi wa bísvú. Albert, this is our chief.

-B-

-C-

-B-
-fwánda, -fánda
to sit, be seated;
live, reside

4. Fwándá sókó olingí. Sit down, please.

-C-
5. Melesí. Thanks.

-B-
nsango, n-
mbóka, m-
news, report
village; region, district;
tribe, race; residence, address
6. Mokonzi, nsango bóni na mbóka?

7. Bangó bánsó bazalí nzótú kólóngónu?

6. Mokonzi, nsango bóni na mbóka?

7. Bangó bánsó bazalí nzótú kólóngónu?

health

Chief, what's new at home?

Is everybody well?

health

Chief, what's new at home?

Is everybody well?

mpongí, m-
mongungí, monkungí, n-
mayélé

sleep

mosquito

understanding, intelligence, intellect, mind, slyness, craftiness, manner, means

only, however, although

Nothing new, however, we haven't gotten any sleep lately.

There are more mosquitoes than you can imagine.

nsango té, káka ndé na butú tozwi mpongí té.

ndé

8. Nsango té, káka ndé na butú tozwi mpongí té.

Nothing new, however, we haven't gotten any sleep lately.

There are more mosquitoes than you can imagine.

igungí áwa mayélé té.

9. Igungí áwa mayélé té.

igungí áwa mayélé té.

igungí áwa mayélé té.

only, however, although

Nothing new, however, we haven't gotten any sleep lately.

There are more mosquitoes than you can imagine.

-keba

-B-
to pay attention, be attentive
to bite, sting


Be careful that the mosquitoes don't bite the children because they would get a bad fever.

Ée, nayébi. Ntína na yángó nayéi.

11. Ée, nayébi. Ntína na yángó nayéi.

Yes, I know. That's why I've come.
12. Olingí nápesa yó pómpi na nkísí ya ngungí?
   talasé (terrasse)
   mpembéni

Do you want me to give you any sprays with DDT?
ditch, canal
side, edge; around, near

13. Ozalí na máí té na talasé na mpembéni ya ndáko?

Don't you have water in the ditches around the house?

14. Ëë, máí ezalí, kási tozalí na pitóló mpó na kosopa likoló.

Yes there is, but we have enough kerosene to pour on (the ditches).

15. Voiture na yó ezalí kúná?

Is your car out there?

16. Nakokí kotíisa pómpi na voiture?

Can I put the sprays in your car?

17. Ëë, melesi.

Yes, thanks.

18. Mokonzí, omélaka masanga níní?

Sir, what do you usually drink?
UNIT 12  LINGALA

-C-

mbíla, m-  palm nuts, palm tree


-B-

20. Andéle! Kenda kozwa
masanga.  André! Go get some drinks.

USEFUL PHRASES

Nazalí na nzala.  I'm hungry.

Nazalí na mpósá ya mái.  I'm thirsty.

Nalémbi.  I'm tired.

Nalémbi na kokéngélé bána.  I'm tired of looking after children.

Naákoyóka m pong.  I'm sleepy.

Naákoyóka molungé.  I'm hot.

Naákoyóka malíli.  I'm cold.

Abéki mosolo na yö.  He borrowed the money from you.

Adéfi mböngö na yö.  He borrowed the money from you.

Abékisi yö mböngö.  He loaned the money to you.

Adéfisi yö mosolo.  He loaned the money to you.

Ayibi mböngö na yö.  He stole the money from you.

Kangá moyibi!  Stop the thief!

Landá moyibi!  Follow the thief!

Ozáli na falänga ya mbuma ya nkóto mokó?  Do you have change for a thousand francs?

Kendé kosangísa masanga.  Go mix some drinks.
nzala
hunger, famine

mpósá
urge, desire

-łembé

to be(come) tired, weary; tender, done

-kěngę

to take glances at, watch

-kěngęle

to watch, guard

malíli

cold; shade, cool place

-beka, -défa

to borrow, buy on credit

-bekisa, -défisa

to lend, sell on credit, pay in advance

mősölqę, m-
money; wealth, dowry

mbóngqę, m-
money

-yiba

to steal, take away

moyíbi, ba-
thief

-landa

to follow, pursue; prosecute; sue; woo, court

mbuma, m-
fruit; sore, boil, grain, seed; change

-sanga

to assemble, come together

NOTES

12.1 Nouns From Derived Stems.

Nouns as well as verbs are formed from both simple and derived stems. This is extremely productive, i.e., very many words are formed in this manner. In the following lessons, the structure of the various classes is described; but beginning with
this lesson, many such new words are introduced in the exercises without build-up or explanation. Since the structure of such words and the roots and affixes have been previously explained, it is up to the student to recognize and analyze these new words with only the help of the English translation. The student must be able to do this if he is to control Lingala.

12.2 Agent Nouns

The MO-BA prefix class and the /-1/ suffix mark agent nouns, e.g., /mokonz1/, 'ruler', 'manager', 'chief' from /-konza/ 'to rule', 'manage'.

12.3 /wa/ /ya/

Öyo azalí mokonz1 wa bísu.

Various alternates of the particle /ya/ occur, e.g., /wa/, /ma/, /mwa/.

12.4 Literary use of /nde/ to Mark Future

In literary Lingala /nde/, 'only', 'although', is sometimes used as a future marker, e.g., /nde nakei/, 'I will go'. Since this use of /nde/ is restricted to certain special styles of written material, the student should continue to AVOID it ENTIRELY even if he becomes fluent in Lingala.

12.5 Hyperbole with /...mayéle tê/.

Ngungi áwa mayéle tê.

To express overabundance of something /...mayéle tê/ is used, e.g., /Ngungi áwa mayéle tê/, 'There are more mosquitoes than you could imagine/count, than there is sand in the sea.'

12.6 Nouns of Deed or Action, Type 2.

The BO-MA prefix class and the suffix /-1/ form a large number of nouns of deed or action, e.g., /bolé1/, 'meal', /boyé1/', 122
'arrival', 'coming'. Since the plural of nearly all these words is quite rare, it is given in the vocabulary in parentheses, e.g., /boband1, (ma-)/, 'beginning', 'introduction'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Nalingi ópésa ngaí falánga ya mbuma ya nkóto m’okó. I need change for a thousand francs.
2. Nalingi ópésa ngaí mbóngó nadéfísákí yó. I need the money I loaned you.
3. Nazalí na besoín ya mbóngó nadéfísákí yó. I need the money I loaned you.
4. Nazalí na besoín ya pitóló mpó na mái. I need some kerosene for water.
5. Ayeí kotuna pitóló mpó na mái. He has come to ask for kerosene for spreading on water.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nkísí ya ngungi ya bínú ekoki. You have enough DDT.
2. Essence ya bísi ekoki. We have enough gasoline.
3. Mosoló ya bangó ekoki. They have enough money.
4. Bilambá ya ye bikoki. She has enough clothes.
5. Masanga ya yó makoki. You have enough beer.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

1. Moko.nzl alobélí ngái te 
   nákéndé kosómba nsósó. 
   The chief told me to go buy a 
   chicken.
   Bakonzi balobélí bísú te 
   tókéndé kosómba nsósó. 
   The chief's told us to go buy 
   some chickens.

2. Mosáli a-fwándí epái ya 
   ndáko. 
   The worker is sitting by the 
   house.
   Basáli bafwándí epái ya 
   ndáko. 
   The workers are sitting by 
   the house(s).

3. Mosálell akolábéléla yo 
   nyama. 
   The servant will prepare the 
   meat for you.
   Basálell bakolábéléla bíní 
   nyama. 
   The servants will prepare the 
   meat for you.

4. Mwána óyo ya mbálí ayébi 
   nkómbo ya mosómbl té. 
   This boy doesn't know the name 
   of the purchaser.
   Bána óyo ya mibálí bayébi 
   nkómbo ya basómbl té. 
   These boys don't know the 
   names of the purchasers.

5. Motékí aákofwandaka nsíma 
   ya bilókó na yé. 
   The trader is sitting behind 
   his things.
   Batekl baákofwandaka nsíma 
   ya bilókó na bangó. 
   The traders are sitting behind 
   their things.

6. Motálí alingí kotíkala té 
   mpó na mbúla. 
   The spectator didn't want to 
   stay because of the rain.
   Batálí balingí kotíkala 
   té mpó na mbúla. 
   The spectators didn't want to 
   stay because of the rain.
7. Moyékolí azalákí na búuku moké. The student had a small book. Bayékolí bazalákí na búuku miké. The students had small books.

8. Molobelí atúní motu óyo motúna. The speaker asked the man a question. Balobelí batúní batu óyo mitúna. The speakers asked the men questions.

9. Mosálisi1 apésákí mwási nkísí. The assistant gave the woman the medicine. Basálisi1 bapésákí básí nkísí. The assistants gave the women the medicine.

10. Tatá na ngái azalí na mosála té. My father doesn't have a job. Batatá na bírí bazalí na misálá té. Our fathers don't have jobs.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Natíndélí mokonzí mafúta na mwána. I sent the chief some oil by the boy.

2. Natíndélí basálí nyama. I sent the workers some meat.

3. Natíndí basálí nyama. I sent the workers for some meat.

4. Natíndí voiture ékendé kokamata mokonzí. I sent the car for the chief.

5. Atúní ngái voiture mpó akendé kokamata mokonzí. He asked me for a car to go get the chief.

6. Atúní ngái voiture mpó akendé na Kinsásá. He asked me for a car to go to Leopoldville.
7. Atúní ngái nátînda pómpî na Kînsásá.
   He asked me to send the spray guns to Leopoldville.

8. Atúní ngái nátînda pómpî na ndáko na yé na Kînsásá.
   He asked me to send the sprays to his house in Leopoldville.

9. Natíkâli na ndáko na yé na Kînsásá.
   I'm staying at his house in Leopoldville.

    I'm staying at work. I have stayed at work.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

1. Mosonî asòmbî masînî ya kosonî bilambâ.
   The tailor bought a sewing machine.

   Basonî basasòmbî masînî ya kosonî bilambâ.
   The tailors bought sewing machines.

2. Motambwisî ya mótuka akokîtsa mobôtisî na lopitàlo.
   The chauffeur will take the midwife to the hospital.

   Batambwisî ya mituka bakokîtsa babôtisî na lopitàlo.
   The chauffeurs will take the midwives to the hospital.

3. Molambi ayébi ntângu ya bokómi ya mokonzi té.
   The cook doesn't know the time of the arrival of the chief.

   Balâmbi bayébi ntângu ya bokómi ya bakonzi té.
   The cooks don't know the hour of arrival of the chiefs.

4. Momèmi sákotîela ngái sandúku na mótuka.
   The porter is putting the trunk in the car for me.

   Bamèmi baákotîela bîsé basandúku na mituka.
   The porters are putting the trunks in the cars for us.
5. Moyémbl ayébísi mokonzl
botíkí ya koyémbl.
Bayémbl bayébísi bakonzl
botíkí ya koyémbl.
The singer submitted his resig-
nation to the choral director.
The singers submitted their
resignation(s) to the choral
director.

6. Mobótí na ngái atúní ntángo
ya boké1 ya nôkô.
Babótí na bisú batúní
ntángo ya boké1 ya banôkô.
My parent asked the departure
time of my uncle.
Our parents asked the departure
time of our uncles.

7. Moyékoll aákoyékola ndéngé
ya bobótísí.
Bayékoll baákoyékola ndéngé
ya bobótísí.
The student is studying
obstetrics.
The students are studying
obstetrics.

8. Bomek1 ya mótuka na ngái
ya síká ezalákí lóbí.
Bomek1 ya mítuka na bisú
ya síká ezalákí lóbí.
I tried out my new car
yesterday.
We tried out our new cars
yesterday.

9. Na námsí ya bolél, molobél
azalákí kolobela batu mpó
na bobandí ya kélásí.
Na námsí ya bolél, balobél
bazalákí kolobela batu mpó
na bobandí ya kélásí.
After the meal, the speaker
talked to the people about
the beginning of school.
After the meal, the speakers
talked to the people about
the beginning of school.

10. Mobóngísí ya mótuka akangí
mótuka mpó na motu ya
makolo.
Babóngísí ya mítuka bakangí
mituka mpó na batu ya
makolo.
The mechanic stopped the car
because of a pedestrian.
The mechanics stopped the cars
because of the pedestrians.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Libosó na boléi, namélí likáya mókó.
   Before the meal, I smoked a cigarette.
2. Libosó na boléi, nasukólí nzótu.
   Before the meal, I took a bath.
3. Libosó ya bokéi, nasukólí nzótu.
   Before leaving, I took a bath.
4. Libosó ya bokéi, atíi mopépe na mótkua.
   Before leaving, he aired up the tires.
5. Nsíma ya bokangí mótkua, atíi mopépe.
   After stopping the car, he aired up the tire(s).
   After stopping the car, he got out.
7. Nsíma ya kotála bipái na bipái, abími.
   After looking all around, he got out.
8. Nsíma ya kotála bipái na bipái, azóngí na mótkua.
   After looking all around, he got back in the car.
   After talking a while, he got back in the car.
10. Nsíma ya kosolola, akotí na ndáko lisíusú.
    After talking a while, he went back in the house again.

Question and Answer Drill 1

1. Ndínga na yó ya mbóka níni?
   What is your native language?
   Ndínga na ngáí ya mbóka ezalí Lingala.
   My native language is Lingala.

2. Oyéi kosála níni?
   What did you come for?
   Nayéi kotúna yó bolimbísi.
   I've come to ask your forgiveness.
3. Ndéngé na yé ya bozalí ezalí bóni?
   Ndéngé na yé ya bozalí ezalí malámu.
   What kind of personality does he have?
   He has a nice personality.

4. Bolongoli mokonzi na mosálá na yé ezalí makási?
   Éé, bolongoli mokonzi na mosálá na yé ezalí makási.
   Is the removal of a chief difficult?
   Yes, the removal of a chief is difficult.

5. Botálí libosó ya linínisa ezalí kitékó?
   Té, botálí libosó ya linínisa ezalí kitékó té.
   Is the view from the window beautiful?
   No, the view from the window isn't beautiful.

6. Bakéngéli bazalí wápi?
   Bakéngéli batélemi libosó ya ndáko monéne.
   Where are the guards?
   The guards are standing in front of the big building.

7. Náni azalí kosangisa masangas?
   Mwána ya mosálá azalí kosangisa masanga.
   Who is mixing the drinks?
   The house boy is fixing the drinks.

8. Olingi nápésa yó níni?
   Nalingi ópésa ngaí nkísí ya ngungi.
   What do you need?
   I need some DDT.

9. Ozwí nsango ya mbóka?
   Èé, leló nazwi nsango ya mbóka.
   Have you had any news from home lately?
   Yes, today I received news from home.

10. Óyo kúná ndáko na yó?
    Èé, yango ndáko na ngaí.
    Is that your house over there?
    Yes, that's my house.
Unit 13

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Ookošala nini?
   What are you doing?

-B-

-koma
   to write, copy, enroll, engrave, sign

-moningo, ba-
   friend, companion, peer, colleague

-mokandá, m1-
   letter, paper, document, sheet of paper

2. Naākokomela moningo na ngai mokandá.
   I'm writing my friend a letter.

   mosiká, (m1-)
   distance, distant, removed, far off

   -yókana
   to hear (from) one another, understand each other, agree

   It's been a long time since we've heard from one another.

-A-

4. Óyo nini?
   What's this?

-B-

-check
   check

-magazini (magasin)
   department store

5. Ōc, nabósání kótinda chec na magazini.
   Oh, I forgot, to send a check to the department store.
nyongo, n-
debt
6. Batání ngái sokó nakozi na
níni mpó nakoñita nyongo
na bangó.
       -A-
They asked me why I'm waiting
before I pay them.

7. Osómbáki níni?
       -B-
What did you buy?

     esáleli, bi-
taliyé, taliyé (atelier)
tool, instrument
shop, workshop, workroom

8. Mwaá bisáleli mókó mpó na
taliyé na ngái.
       -A-
Just some tools for my workshop.

     esálelo, bi-
shop, workshop, workroom,
place to/for work

9. Osálaka níni na esálelo
na yó?
       -B-
What do you make in your shop?

     ekeko, bi-
mpémbé, m-
mpémbé, m-
zezoku, n-
mitába, ma-
picture, sculpture, statue
white; chalk; ivory

elephant
wood, board

10. Bíkeko ya mpémbé ya nzoku
ná ya mbáyá.
       -A-
Sculpture in ivory and wood.

11. Nakoki kotála yango na
ntángu ya mosálá?
       -A-
Can I visit your shop during
working hours?

131
12. Mpó na níní tê? Why not?

13. Tozalí na bilóko míngi tê ya kotéka, kási okoki kopésa maloba mpó tósála elóko olingí. We don't have many things to sell, but you can order what you want us to make.

14. Ntángu bóní okokí kozíla mpó òzwá yangó? How long do you have to wait for them?

15. Káka mikolô míbalé toó misatu. Only two or three days.

16. Bofungolaka ntángu níní? What hours are you open?

17. Na huit heures tii na midi, mpé na trois heures tii na sept heures ya mpókwa. From eight until noon, and from three until seven in the afternoon.


19. Lóbi. See you tomorrow.
USEFUL PHRASES

Kíliyî, kíliyî ebúkâni.
The pencil is broken.

Ekomelî ya máî ya mokandá ebúkâni.
The pen is broken.

Lifungóla ebúkâni.
The key is broken.

Pósîta efungwmaka ntâmgüníni?
What hours is the post office open?

Tômbéle na kâti ya Kínsásá ntâlo bóni?
How much does it cost to send a letter within Leopoldville?

Tômbéle na Kínsásá tîí na Kínsângâna ntâlo bóni?
How much does it cost to send a letter from Leopoldville to Stanleyville?

Palató atîkî mîkandá.
The postman left some mail.

Palató ayêî na mîkandá.
The postman brought the mail.

Esîkâ ya kobwáka mîkandá ezalí na nsûka ya balabâlâ.
There's a mail box/post office on the corner of the street.

Názâwí masíni ya koseba kíliyî na esîkâ ya kôtâka búuku.
I got a pencil sharpener at the bookstore.

Nâsîngî bîfândelî mpô na kelâsî.
I ordered some seats/desks for the school.

Libóké etíndâmi na avîô.
The package was sent by airmail.

kíliyî, kíliyî (crayon)
pencil; legal charges, costs

ekomelî, bi-
writing instrument, writing material

lifungóla, ma-
key

pósîta (poste)
post office, postal service, mail box
UNIT 13

LINGALA

témbołé (timbre)  
postage-stamp

káti  
in, inside (of), in the  
middle of, among, center,  
middle, inside

táló, ntálú, n-  
price, number

palató  
errand boy, messenger, postman

-bwáka  
to throw; reject, renounce,  
throw-out, disown

balabálá  
street, (broad) road

-seba  
to sharpen, file, whet; draw  
palm wine

-sëngë, -sënga  
to ask for, beg, order  
(merchandise)

efándeli, bi-  
seat, chair

libóké, ma-  
bunch, group, pack, package,  
swarm

avió (avion)  
airplane, airmail

NOTES

13.1 Passive

Libóké etíndámi na avió.

The passive extension /-am/ refers to something done by someone/something other than the subject of the verb, e.g., /Mónoko ye ndáko ekangwàmi na mwána/. 'The door is/has been opened by the child.' The passive also occurs without an expressed agent, i.e., without /na/ and the doer of the action, e.g., /Libóké etíndámi na avió/, 'The package was sent by airplane.' /na avió/ is not the agent, but the means used by the unexpressed agent.
/-am-/ after primary vowels in some verbs is /-em-/ e.g., /Monoko ya ndako ekangeni/, 'The door has been closed'. /-am-/ after secondary vowels is /-em-/ or /-om-/ as determined by vowel harmony.

13.2 Ingressive Stative: Reciprocal

Mikollo mikomi mosika toko yokana lisusu nsango tê.
Nabosani kotinda chec na magazini.

The ingressive stative extension /-am-/ refers to something that gets done, reaches or attains a certain state, becomes in a certain condition often with the help of the subject of the verb. The ingressive stative can be very confusing to speakers of English and French because it translates into a number of their grammatical categories as (1) a passive, (2) a stative, (3) a reciprocal, or (4) a reflexive. But regardless of the translation, the student must remember that the basic idea is that of becoming or arriving at the state given in the verb stem, e.g., /Namonisí na ye/, 'I was seen by him', or 'I got seen by him', 'I was seen with him', or 'I got seen with him! We saw each other', or 'we got seen by each other'. Consider also /Monoko ya ndako ekangwani./ 'The door is open', 'The door got open', 'The door has come open'.

The plural of the ingressive stative is usually reciprocal, i.e., 'to do for one another', as in the dialogue /Mikollo mikomi mosika toko yokana lisusu nsango tê/, 'we haven’t heard from each other for a long time.', or 'we haven’t been heard from (let ourselves he heard from) for a long time.'

13.3 /Mikollo mikomi mosika/

/mikollo mikomi mosika/, 'It has been a long time since that'... is a fixed expression, i.e., no changes or substitutions can be made in this construction, e.g., /mbula/, 'years', cannot be substituted for /mikollo/, 'days.'
13.4 Instrument Nouns, Type 1

esálell

Instrument nouns of most commonplace things have the E-BI prefixes, the applicative extension, and an /-1/ suffix and mean the instrument or tool of the base, e.g., /esálell/, literally 'doer', 'thing to do with', i.e., 'tool', 'instrument', and /ezálell/, 'thing to sit in', 'seat', 'chair'.

13.5 Locative Nouns, Type 1

esálelo

Locative nouns have the E-BI prefixes, the applicative extension, and an /-0/ suffix and mean the place to do or for doing something, e.g., /esálelo/, literally 'place to work', i.e., 'shop', 'workroom'.

13.6 Avoidance of Base Repetition

Mwáa bisálell mókó mpó na taliyé na ngáí.

Lingala usually avoids the repetition of the same base in a sentence. In the sentence above from the dialogue, the French loanword /taliyé/, 'workshop', is used instead of /esálelo/, 'workshop', because the base /-sáll/ is used earlier in the sentence in /bisálell/, 'tools'.

The same applies to having a verb and its object from the same base. Any such combination as 'to walk a walk', will be avoided and words from different bases will be used or the object will be omitted. However, it is not uncommon for both the subject and the verb to have the same base.

13.7 Instrument Nouns, Type 2

Some instrument nouns are marked by the LI-MA prefix class and either an /-a/ or /-á/ suffix, e.g., /lisállá/, 'key', and /lisállá/, 'cultivated field'.

136
13.8 Instrument Nouns, Type 3

Some abstract instrument nouns have the LI-MA prefixes and an /-1/ suffix, e.g., /litális1/, 'demonstration', 'a showing'.

13.9 Expletive

Bakosála litális1 na lisálá.

The third person plural is used as an expletive, i.e., translates 'there is/are', e.g., /Bakosála litális1 na lisálá./, 'There will be a demonstration'. Compare Note 10.2.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize all verbs.

1. Nazali kokomela moníngá na ngáí mokándá.
   Tozáli kokomela baníngá na bisú mikándá.
   I'm writing a letter to my friend.
   We are writing letters to our friends.

2. Asómbáki mwáa esáleli mókó mpó na talíyé na yé.
   Basómbáki mwáa bisáleli mókó mpó na batalíyé na bangó.
   He bought a tool for his shop.
   They bought some tools for their shops.

3. Motu óyo azali kosálá ezáleli ya mabáyá.
   Batu óyo bazali kosálá bizáleli ya mabáyá.
   The man is making a wooden chair.
   The men are making chairs out of wood.

4. Bakosála litális1 na lisálá ya Pierre.
   Bakosála matális1 na masálá ya Pierre.
   There will be a demonstration in Pierre's field.
   There will be demonstrations in Pierre's fields.
5. Mokonzl atíndí mǒŋko na mwána.
Bakonzl batíndí mǒŋko na bána.
The chief sent a message by the boy.
The chiefs sent messages by the boys.

6. Okokí kopésa ngái lisálisi?
Bokokí kopésa bísú lisálisi?
Can you give me some help?
Can you give us some help?

7. Tatá atíndélí ngái mokandá na mbǒngó na káti.
Batatá batíndélí bísú mıkandá na mbǒngó na káti.
My father sent me a letter with money in it.
Our fathers sent us letters with money in them.

8. Atúní na motu óyo epái alálaka.
Batúní na batu óyo epái balálaka.
He asked the man where he lives.
They asked the men where they lived.

Toókokomela baníngá na bísú mıkandá.
I'm writing a letter to my friend.
We are writing letters to our friends.

10. Apésí yité esálelí.
Bapésí bínú bisálelí.
He gave you the tool.
They gave you the tools.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Naákokomela moníngá na ngái mokandá.
I'm writing my friend a letter.

2. Naákokoma nkómo nyá bayékoli.
I'm writing the names of the students.

All the stores have the names of the students.
   All the stores have small wood statues.
5. Áwa basálaka bikeko ya mikó ya mabáya.
   Here they make little wooden statues.
6. Áwa basálaka mikoló nyónso.
   Here they work every day.
7. Áwa batékaka mpémbé ya nzoku mikoló nyónso.
   Here they sell ivory every day.
8. Áwa batékaka mpémbé ya nzoku káka mokoló ya mpósó.
   Here they sell ivory only on Saturday.
   I'm at home only on Saturday.
10. Nazalaka na ndako nsima ya ngaonga ya nsambo ya mpókwa.
    I am home after seven P.M.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nayékwisi bayékoli kokoma.
   I taught the students how to write.
2. Alobí na bayékoli bákoma.
   She told the students to write.
3. Alobí na bána básálisana.
   She told the children to help each other.
4. Tolíngí bána básálisana.
   We want the children to help each other.
5. Tolíngí kolálisa bána.
   We want to put the children to sleep.
   They are putting the children to bed.
7. Bazalí kobímsísa voiture.
   They are getting the car out.
8. Azali kobimisa voiture.
    He is getting the car out.

9. Azali kobimisela ngaí
    voiture.
    He is getting the car out for me.

10. Nalobéli yé ábimisela
    ngaí voiture.
    I asked him to get the car out for me.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Sika óyo ekómi ntángu
    ya mosálá.
    It's time to start to work.

2. Sika áwa ekómi ntángu
    ya mosálá.
    It's time to start to work.

3. Sika áwa tókendé ntángu
    ekoki.
    It's time to go.

4. Sika óyo tókendé ntángu
    ekoki.
    It's time to go.

5. Ntángu ya kokendé ekoki.
    It's time to go.

    It's time to eat.

7. Ntángu ya kosálisa bána
    ekoki.
    It's time to help the children.

8. Ntángu ya kobanda kelási
    ekoki.
    It's time to start class.
    It's time to leave for school.

9. Ntángu ya kofungola
    magaziní ekoki.
    It's time to open the store.

10. Ntángu ya kokanga magaziní
    ekoki.
    It's time to close the store.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Mọnọko ya ndáko ekangémi. The door is closed.
   The door has been closed.
2. Mọnọko ya ndáko ekangwání. The door is open.
   The door has come open.
3. Mọnọko ya ndáko ekangwámí. The door is opened.
   The door has been opened.
4. Mọnọko ya ndáko ezáláki ya kokangwama ntángu nakómáki.
   The door was open(ed) when I arrived.
5. Mọnọko ya ndáko ezálí kokangwana. The door comes open.
   The door won't stay shut.
6. Mọnọko ya ndáko ezálí kokangwana. The door opens/swings/pushes open. (though it is closed).
7. Mọnọko ya ndáko ezálí ya kokangwama té. The door is closed (but not locked).
8. Mọnọko ya ndáko ezálí ya kokangwama. The door is opened back/standing open.
9. Mọnọko ya ndáko efungwámákí na moyékwísí. The door was opened by the teacher.
10. Mọnọko ya ndáko efungwámaka ntángu nyónso na moyékwísí. The door is always opened by the teacher.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mìkándá mìkomámákí na bayékólí. The letters were written by the students.
2. Bìkeko bìsòmbámákí na bayékólí. The statues were purchased by the students.
3. Bikeko bisóbámákí na palató. The statues were bought by the postman.
4. Mafungóla mazwámákí na palató. The keys were taken by the postman.
5. Mafungóla mazwámákí na basálí. The keys were taken by the workmen.
6. Témbele bimónámákí na basálí. The stamps were found by the workmen.
7. Témbele bimónámákí na moningá na ngáí. The stamps were found by my friend.
8. Libóké etíndámí na moningá na ngáí. The package was sent by my friend.
9. Libóké etíndámí na avió. The package was sent by airmail.
10. Libóké etíndámí na Bruxelles mpó na Kongó. The package was sent from Brussels to the Congo.
Unit 14

Basic Sentences

-A-

Mbala, m-
time, times, often, mostly

1. Mbala bóní basálaka election How often do you have elections na mbóka na bínú? in your country?

-B-

2. Election ya président toó Election for president or for ya bourgmestres? mayors?

-A-


-B-

4. Óyo ya président ezali na The one for president is every nsima ya mbúla míneí four years, the one for nyόnsō, óyo ya babourg- mayors every two years. mestres nsima ya mbúla mibalé.

-A-

5. Bozali na baParlementaires How many members of Parliament bóni? are there?

-B-

6. Nakanisí ntúkú nsambo toó I believe seventy or eighty. mwambe.

-A- to vote

'B voter'

143
7. Banáni bakokí kovoter na election?
   -B-

8. Batu bazalí na mbúla ntúka míbalé na moko tíí na likoló.
   -A-
   ekólo, bi-

9. Mpó na kovoter, batálaka ekólo?
   -B-
   se

10. Té, wáná té, káka se mbúla na ndéngé ya motu okovoter.
    -A-

11. Election ya nsíma ezaláki ntango níní?
    -B-

12. Ezaláki na mbúla elekí.
    -A-

13. Election yangó ezaláki mpó ya président toó ya babourgmestres?
    -A-

Who can vote in the election?
Those who have reached the age of twenty-one and over.

With regard to voting, is tribe considered?

That...

No, not that, only the age and competence of the person you will vote for.

When was the last election?

It was last year.

Was that election for president or for mayors?
14. Ezaláki mpó ya bourgmestres. It was for mayors.

15. Mpó ya président, óyo mbúla misátu. The one for president was three years ago.

USEFUL PHRASES

Aákoláksá bána ndéngé ya kobé urges ndembó. He's teaching the children how to play soccer.

Aákoláksá bána ndéngé ya kozínga bolangíti. He's showing the children how to fold the blankets.

Aákoláksá bána ndéngé ya kosakana. He's showing the children how to amuse themselves.

Ekípe ya Lováníum elóngí na lisánu. The team from Lovanium won the game.

Ayambí ndembó. He caught the ball.

Atíi monyámá. He made a goal.

Atíi ntembe na ngái. He discussed it with me.

Ndámbó ya batu bámátákí na masúwa. Part of the men got on the boat.

Ndámbó ya batu babimákí na masúwa. Part of the men got off the boat.

Ndámbó ya batu bakótákí na otobísí. Part of the men got in the bus.

Ndámbó ya batu bakítákí na otobísí. Part of the men got out of the bus.

-laka to give advice; set a time; promise; order

-lakisá to show, display, teach, instruct
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ndembó, n-</th>
<th>rubber, ball</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-zinga</td>
<td>to fold (up), roll (up); surround, encircle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bolangítí, bolangísí</td>
<td>blanket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sakana, sana</td>
<td>to play, amuse oneself, have a good time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ékípe (équipe)</td>
<td>team, squad, crew, gang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lónga</td>
<td>to be successful, win, be proved right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lísano, lísanu, ma-</td>
<td>game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yamba</td>
<td>to accept, believe, receive, entertain, welcome, guide, steer, catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monyámá, mi-</td>
<td>net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntembe, n-</td>
<td>discussion, argument, doubt, suspicion, hesitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ndámbo, n-</td>
<td>part, piece, share, half</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masúwa</td>
<td>boat, ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otobísí (autobus)</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 14.1 Miscellaneous Nouns

ekólo ekeko

A number of different kinds of nouns, such as collectives and human artifacts, are marked by the E-BI prefix class and an /-o/ or /-u/ suffix, e.g., /ekólo/, 'tribe', 'region or origin', /-kóla/, 'to grow (up)', /ekeko/, 'picture', 'statue', /-keka/, 'to see', 'look', 'examine'.
14.2 /se/

/se/ introduces subordinate clauses and freely substitutes with /te/. Compare Note 6.5

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1**

1. Mbala bóni basálaka election? How often are elections held?
2. Mbala bóni osílí okeí na Kongó? How many times have you been in the Congo?
3. Mbala bóni osílí okeí na Kisangani? How many times have you been to Stanleyville?
4. Mbúla bóni osálí na Kisangani? How long have you been in Stanleyville?
5. Mbúla bóni osálí na Matádi? How long have you been in Matádi?
6. Ntango níni ozalákí na Matádi? How long were you at Matádi?
7. Ntango níni ozalákí na Leó? How long were you at Leopoldville?
8. Mbúla bóni okosála na Leó? How long will you be in Leopoldville?
9. Mbúla bóni okosála na Bóma? How long will you be in Boma?
10. Múkolo bóni okosála mpó okokóma na Bóma? How long will it be until you arrive in Boma?

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2**

1. Batu nyónsq míneí baleki mbúla ntúkú míneí. All four of the men are over forty years old.
2. Batu nyónsq míneí bazalákí áwa mbúla eleki. All four of the men were here last year.
3. Ndámbo ya batu bazaláki
    áwa mbúla elekí.
    Some of the men were here last
    year.

4. Ndámbo ya batu bakozala
    áwa mbúla ekoyáa.
    Some of the men will be here
    next year.

5. Bikólo nyónso bikozala
    áwa mbúla ekoyáa.
    All of the tribe will be here
    next year.

6. Bikólo nyónso bizaláki
    na ndáko ya mokonzl.
    The whole tribe was present at
    the chief's house.

7. Bourgmestre ya Leó deux
    azaláki na ndáko ya
    mokonzl.
    The mayor of Leopoldville II
    was at the chief's house.

8. Bourgmestre ya Leó deux
    aákokonza malámú.
    The mayor of Leopoldville II
    does a good job of managing.

9. Mokonzl ya mbóka ya bisú
    aákokonza malámú.
    The chief of our village rules
    well.

10. Mokonzl ya mbóka ya bisú
    alingí ndáko ya sika.
    The chief of our village would
    like to have a new house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

1. Liyébisi etíndámi na
    molakisí.
    The announcement was sent to
    (or by) the teacher.

    Mayébisi matíndámi na
    balakisí.
    The announcements were sent to
    (or by) the teachers.

2. Móbongísí bibendé abosánákí
    ebé téli na ye.
    The mechanic forgot his hammer.

    Babongísí bibendé babosánákí
    bibé téli na bangó.
    The mechanics forgot their
    hammers.
3. Ekangeli ya məŋəkə ebukənɪ.  
   Bìkangeli ya məŋəkə bibukənɪ.  
   The door handle got broken.  
   The door handles got broken.

4. Lifuta na ngái ekokí tə na lubótə mobimba.  
   Mafuta na bìsu mokokí tə na mabótə mobimba.  
   My salary isn't sufficient for my entire family.  
   Our salaries aren't sufficient for our entire families.  
   There isn't enough cooking oil for our entire families.

5. Na makanisi na yə, alingí kopésə ndingisa ya kobina.  
   Na makanisi na bangó, balingí kopésə ndingisa ya kobina.  
   It's his intention to give permission for the dance.  
   It's their intention to give permission for the dance.

   Bakomi ya mìkandá oyo bayébáni tə.  
   The writer of this document is unknown.  
   The writers of these documents are unknown.

7. Atiyáni ntembe na ngái.  
   Batiyáni ntembe na bìsu.  
   He discussed it with me.  
   They discussed it with us.

8. Azálí kozíla mbótama ya mwána na yé ya libosó.  
   Bazálí kozíla mbótama ya bána na bangó ya libosó.  
   She is awaiting the birth of her first child.  
   They are waiting for the birth of their first children.

   Bayékoli bakanisi te bakelasí bikangémí.  
   The students thought school was closed.  
   The students though the schools were closed.
10. Mosa-lele akopalola mbala. The servant is going to peel the potato.

Basalele baakopalola mbala. The servants are going to peel the potatoes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Nani azali mokonz ya mboka ya binu? Who is the chief of your village?

2. Banani bazali na mokonz ya mboka ya binu? Who is with the chief of your village?

3. Banani bakokiki kovoter na election? Who can vote in the elections?

4. Banani bakokiki kosalisa batu ya mosala? Who can help the employees?

5. Banani bakokiki kosala na leta? Who can work for the government?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Ebongaki naziila mbula misatu liboso ya kokandu na Mputu. I had to wait three years before going to Europe.

2. Ebongi naziila mbula misatu liboso ya kokandu na Mputu. I have to wait three years before going to Europe.

3. Ebongi naziila tii mokolo ya mosala mokó mpó na kosomba bilamba wana. I'll have to wait until Monday to buy those clothes.

4. Ebongi naziila tii mokolo ya mosala minel mpó na kosomba bilambé wana. I'll have to wait until Thursday to buy those clothes.
5. Sôtí oyákí tê, mbë nazilákí
tíi mokọlọ ya mosálá mínei
mpó na kosómba bilamba wáná.

If you hadn't come, I would
have had wait until Thursday
to buy the clothes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Bandá akëndêkí naínu akoméli
bisú mokandá tê.
Since he left, he hasn't
written us a letter.

2. Bandá mbúla elekí naínu
akoméli bisú mokandá tê.
He hasn't written us a letter
since last year.

3. Útá mbúla elekí naínu akoméli
bisú mokandá tê.
He hasn't written us a letter
since last year.

4. Útá mbúla elekí naínu nabëtí
lisúsu ndembô tê.
I haven't played soccer again
since last year.

5. Tií na mbúla ekoyàa nakobëta
lisúsu ndembô tê.
I won't play soccer again
until next year.

6. Tií na mbúla ekoyàa election
mosúsu ekozala tê.
There won't be another election
until next year.

7. Tií nsìma ya mbúla misátu,
election mosúsu ekozala tê.
There won't be another election
for three years.

8. Tií nsìma ya mbúla misátu
bokolála na esiká óyo.
You will live here for three
years.

9. Tií na ebandëli ya mbúla
ekoyàa, bokolála na
esiká óyo.
You will live here until the
beginning of next year.

10. Tií na nsúka ya mbúla ekoyàa,
bokolála na esiká óyo.
You will live here until the
end of next year.
1. Bâna baâkosakana na kâti ya ndâko mpó na mbûla. The children will play inside because of the rain.

2. Bâna baâkosakana na libânda mpó likolô ezali malâmû. The children will play outside because the weather is nice.

3. Bâna batîndâmî na molâkisî bâsakana na libânda mpó na likolô ezali malâmû. The children were sent out to play by the teacher because the weather is nice.

4. Bâna batîndâmî na molâkisî bâmônô litâlisî. The children were sent to see the exposition by the teacher.

5. Bâna batîndâmî bâmônô bîtâlisî na molâkisî. The children were sent with the teacher to see the exposition.

1. Madêsu malâmbâmî na bôî. These beans were prepared by the houseboy.

2. Toôkoyôkama na bôî. We will be (over) heard by the houseboy.

3. Toôkoyôkana na bôî. We are on friendly terms with the houseboy.

4. Toôkoyôkana na batu míngî. We have a lot of friends.

5. Président ayêbâmî na batu míngî. The President is known by many people.

14.3 Ambiguity of Agent and Indirect Object

Lîyêbisî etîndâmî na molâkisî.

The above sentence would usually be understood to mean, 'The notice was sent by the teacher', however, it could mean, 'The notice was sent to the teacher'. To specify only 'to', /mpó na/
is used, e.g., /liyebisə etɪndämí mpó na molakisi/, 'The notice was sent to the teacher.'

14.4 Lovanium University

Lovanium, the national university of the Congo, is beautifully laid out on a plateau about eight miles from downtown Leopoldville.

14.5 Leopoldville II

Leopoldville is divided into 'communes' each with a 'bourgmestre'. Though the communes are part of a larger municipal organization, they do have a great deal of autonomy.
Unit 15

Basic Sentences

-A-
mokóló, ba-
grown person, adult
1. Okosála mírí, sóko okómi
mokóló? What are you going to do when
you are grown?

-B-
'ministre'
minister (cabinet post)
2. Na makanísí na ngáí, nalingaka
nákóma ministre. In my opinion, I'd like to be
a cabinet minister.

-A-
sodá, ba-
soldier
3. Kási liboso okosála
mosálá ya sodá? But first, aren't you going to
do military service?

-B-
4. Té tatá, mosálá wána
nalingi yango té. No, Sir, I don't want that job.
-pusa
to surpass, exceed, be
very, be too much
-nyókóló
to mistreat, torture, annoy, oppress

5. Epusí monyókólí míngí. That's much too wearisome.

-A-
6. Zilá, náyébisa yo ndéngé
ya mpási tomónáká. Just a minute, I'd like to tell
you how we used to suffer.

154
7. Ozáláká sodá?
   -B-
   You used to be a soldier?
   -A-

8. Áa, mwána na ngáí, koloba té, mosálá ya sodá ekómí mosálá ya mbóngó.
   -B-
   Oh, my child, don't mention that, military service has become a well-paying occupation.
   -A-

   -B-
   In our time, everything was difficult.
   -A-

10. Obandáká sodá na mbúla bóní?
   -B-
   At what age did you start military service?
   -A-

   -B-
   I have no idea. In that time the names (births) of children were not recorded.
   -A-

12. Boóngó bozaláká kosála ndéngé nínì?
   -B-
   Well then, how did it use to be done?
   -A-

13. Tiká násílsísa elambá ya batu eúmélí míngí.
   -B-
   Go away and let me finish this garment.
   -A-

   -B-
   Goodby, I'm going home.
15. Kenđé malamu, oyaka kotála ngáí ntángu mosusu.

- Goodby, come to see me again some time.

USEFUL PHRASES

Azalí kobolosé sokoto. He's brushing the uniform.
Azalí kotíya silásí na sapáto. He's polishing his shoes.
Azalí kongengisa lifúngú. He's shining the buttons.
Azalí kotonga butó. He's sewing on a button.
Matíti ya bolósí masílí. The brush is worn out.
Abunáká na etumba. He fought in the war.
Babomáká yé na etumba. He was killed in the war.
Azálí mobangé. He's an old man.
Azálí mokísé. He's short.
Azálí mabe, He's ugly.
Ezagí motúya malamu. It's cheap.
Ezálí ntálu makáslí. It's expensive.

-bolósí (brosser) to brush
bolósí (brosse) brush
sokoto uniform, military jacket/clothing
silásí (cirage) polish, shoe polish
-ngengê to shine, blaze
-tonga to bind, tie, join, twist, braid, plait, weave, sew, expand, enlarge
butó (bouton) button
### Basic Course Unit 15

| ilti: ma- | blade of grass, sheet of paper, hair, fur, down, bristle |
| -buna, -bunda | to fight, wage war, wrestle, struggle |
| etumba, bi- | war, fight, battle, conflict |
| -boma | to kill, murder, hunt, catch, damage badly, destroy, extinguish, erase, wipe (off), do away with |
| mobangé, ba- | old person |
| mokú: sé, mi- | short, small |
| motú: ya, mi- | price, value, number |

### Notes

15.1 Intermediate Past

Náyébísa yò ndéngé ya mpá:1 tomóná:ká.

The intermediate past is marked by the /-ák-/ extension and a high-tone imperfective suffix /-á/, e.g., /tomóná:ká/, 'we saw', 'we used to see'. In general, the intermediate past refers to something that happened more than a month ago but not more than about thirty years ago. However, as with the other tenses, the time referent is not exact and refers to something that took place between recently and a long time ago. It very often translates 'used to' in English and into the imperfect in French.

15.2 Distant Past

The distant past is marked by a high tone imperfective suffix /-á/ and refers to something that took place (usually) more than a generation ago, i.e., a long time ago, e.g., /akú: fá/, 'he died (a long time ago)'.

157
15.3 Comparison of Intensity

Epusí mmonyokoli míngi.

Intensity or excess degree of something is expressed by /-pusa/, 'to surpass', 'be very', 'be too much', e.g., /Epusí mmonyokoli míngi/, 'It's much too wearisome', literally, 'It exceeds weariness much'. See also Note 9.1.

15.4 Comparison of Degree

Aleki mwási na monéngi.

Comparison of degree is expressed by /-leka/, 'to pass by', 'exceed', /Alekí mwási na monéngi/, 'He's bigger than his wife', literally 'He exceeds his wife in bigness'.

The 'superlative' is shown by /-leka/ plus /nyónsó/, 'all', 'every', /Alekí mibáli nyónsó na molaí/, 'He's the tallest of the men', literally, 'He exceeds all the men in length'.

15.5 Inversion of Subject and Verb

Ezaláka bísu, makambo nyónsó mpási.

One way of forming temporal subordinate clauses is to reverse the order of the subject and verb. In this type of construction, the verb prefix is /e-/.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Bambúla eleki míngi mokoló óyo azaláka sodá. This man was a soldier many years ago.
2. Bambúla eleki míngi nazaláká na ndáko óyo. Many years ago I lived in that house.
3. Ntángu nazaláká mwána nazaláká na ndáko óyo. When I was a child, I lived in that house.
4. Ntángu nazaláká mwána, banyama míngi bazaláká áwa. When I was a child, there were many animals here.

5. Ntángu tokendáká na mbóka, banyama míngi bazaláká áwa. When we moved from the village, there were many animals here.

6. Ntángu tokendáká na mbóka, tata atikáláká na mosálá ya sodá. When we left the village, my father was a soldier.

7. Ntángu mamá akúfáká, tata atikáláká na mosálá ya sodá. When mother died, father was still a soldier.

8. Ntángu mamá akúfáká, nazaláká naino mwána moké. When mother died, I was still a small child.

9. Tatá asombáká ndákó na bísu ntángu nazaláká naino mwána moké. Father bought our house when I was still a small child.

10. Tatá asombáká ndákó na bísu ntángu ayáká na Leò. Father bought this house when he came to Leopoldville.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Alekí mwásí na monéngi. He is bigger than his wife.

2. Alekí mwásí na molaí. He is taller than his wife.

3. Alekí mwásí na bambúla. He is (a little) older than his wife.

4. Alekí mwásí na mokúsé. He is shorter than his wife.

5. Alekí mwásí na mobangé. He is (much) older than his wife.

Pattern Drill 2

1. Mótuka óyo elekí wána kitókó. This car is prettier than that one.
2. Mótuka óyo eleki wána na makási. This car is better-built than that one.
3. Mótuka óyo eleki wána na ntálo. This car is more expensive than that one.
4. Mótuka óyo eleki wána na kotángbola. This car runs faster than that one.
5. Mótuka óyo eleki wána na molái. This car is longer than that one.

Pattern Drill 3

1. Mótuka óyo epúsí kítóko. This car is very beautiful.
2. Mótuka óyo epúsí make sí. This car is very well-built.
3. Mótuka óyo epúsí ntálo. This car is too expensive.
4. Mótuka óyo epúsí kotángbola. This car is very fast.
5. Mótuka óyo epúsí molái. This car is too long.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ntángu nazaláká na Kínsássá, nazaláká kofánda epái na yé. When I lived in Leopoldville, I stayed at his house.
2. Ntángu nazaláká moyékollí, nazaláká kofánda epái na yé. When I was a student, I used to live at his house.
3. Ntángu nazaláká moyékollí, nazaláká kobíma míngí. When I was a student, I used to go out a lot.
4. Libosó tátá ákuìfá, nazaláká kobíma míngí. Before my father died, I used to go out a lot.
5. Libosó tátá ákuìfá, apésáká ngáí mótuka. Before my father died, he gave me a car.
After I finished school, he gave me a car.

After I finished school, I looked for a job.

After I returned from America, I looked for a job.

After I returned from America, I used to write to my friends occasionally.

When I had time, I used to write to my friends occasionally.

Pattern Drill 4

1. Mwána na ngaí alekí óyo ya yó na mbúla. My son is older than yours.
2. Mwána na ngaí alekí óyo ya yó na maye. My daughter is smarter than yours.
3. Mwána na ngaí alekí óyo ya yó na kitóko. My daughter is prettier than yours.
4. Mwána na ngaí alekí óyo ya yó na mola. My son is taller than yours.
5. Mwána na ngaí alekí óyo ya yó na makási. My son is stronger than yours.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nazaláká kokéndë kolía epái na bangó ntángu mamá akótáká lopítálo. I went to eat at their house when mother went to the hospital.
2. Nazaláká nainu mwána ntángu etumba ekweyaka na mbóka. I was still a child when the war took place in our country.
3. Azaláká káka na mbúla zómí ntángu etumba ekwéyáká na mbóka.

He was only ten years old when the war took place in our country.

4. Azaláká káka na mbúla zómí ntángu tatá na yé akúfáká.

He was only ten years old when his father died.

5. Amekáká kozwá mosálá ntángu tatá na yé akúfáká.

He tried to get a job when his father died.

6. Amekáká kozwá mosálá nsíma ya mbótamá na mwána.

He tried to get a job after the birth of his son.

7. Ayáká na Kinsásá nsíma ya mbótamá na mwána.

He came to Leopoldville after the birth of his son.

8. Ayáká na Kinsásá ntángu azaláká kosála na masuíwa.

He came to Leopoldville while he was working on a riverboat.


I knew him while he was working on a riverboat.


I knew him before he left Stanleyville.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Basodá bazingí mbóka.

The soldiers surrounded the village.

2. Basodá baškotíya silásí ya sapáto.

The soldiers are polishing their shoes.

3. Momémí akendêkí koluka silásí ya sapáto.

The porter has gone to get some shoe polish.

4. Momémí akendêkí koluka butó ya sokoto.

The porter has gone to get some buttons for his uniform.

5. Sodá ōyo angangisákí butó ya sokoto.

This soldier shined his uniform buttons.
6. Sodá óyo alekí wáná na molái. This soldier is taller than that one.

7. Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na molái. This car is longer than that one.

8. Mótuka óyo epusí ntálo. This car is too expensive.


10. Bolósí wáná ekómi ya kála. That brush is old.
Unit 16

Basic Sentence

-A-

1. Libóké ya batu wáná ezalí kosálá níni?
   What is that group of men doing?

-B-

to tear, split, cleave, saw, tear up, break up, cut through

nzelá, nzilá
	o road, way, path, means, permission

2. Bazalí kopasola nzelá.
   They are building a road through.

-A-

3. Nzelá yango ekende tíí wápi?
   How far is the road supposed to go?

-B-

   I believe it's going as far as Matádí.

-A-

5. Bakosála mìkolph bóní na mayélë na yò.
   How long will it take to build in your estimation?

-B-

strength, power, ability, quality
6. Sóko bazalí na nguyá, bakoki kosála sánzá míSAtu toó míné1. If they keep at it, they can do it in three or four months.

-A-

7. Áwa tíí na Matádi bakilo-
metres boní? How many kilometers is it from here to Matádi?

-B-

8. Na avió toó na mótkuka? By plane or by car?

-A-


-B-

10. Nakanísí nkámá míné1 kilometres. I believe it's four hundred kilometers.

-A-

11. Bóongó na avió? And by plane?

-B-


-A-

13. Nzelá ya ndéngé nín1 bakosálá? What kind of road are they building?

-B-

simétí (ciment) cement

14. Libosó, bakotíya mabángá basangísí na simétí. First, they will pour stone(s) mixed with cement.
15. Bakotúta na libendé mpó
te esimba makásı.

They will beat it out (smooth)
with a tamper to make it hold
(together) tightly.

-A-

16. Bóongó na nsimá?

And then?

-B-

-sopa
to pour, spill overturn,
spread, unload

mokóbo, mì-
color, paint

-yínda
to become dark, black,
dirty

mwíndu, míndu,
moíndo
black, dark, Negro; bad
color/intention;
with dislike/aversion

17. Bakosopa mokóbo ya mwíndu
likoló mpó te simétí na
mabángá bısímba makásı.

They'll spread some black
colored material on top
so the cement and rocks
will bond together well.

-A-

18. Mokóbo yangó nkómbó níńí?

What's the name of the black-
colored material?

-B-

falansé
French
’goudron’
tar

166
It's called 'goudron' in French.

-putulú-
cinders, ashes, dust, powder

20. Siméti níni bakotíya, ya putulú too ya mí-mái?
What kind of cement are they to use, liquid or dry?

-21.-
21. Óyo ya mí-mái.
Liquid.

USEFUL PHRASES

Dzeké ékotóka mabelé.
The steamshovel is digging up the ground.

Dzeké ékotímola libúlú.
The steamshovel is digging a hole.

Dzeké ékotóndisa mabelé na kamió.
The steamshovel is filling the trunk with earth.

Mibálí baákotímola libélá ya máí na plósi na mpáu.
The men are digging a well with picks and shovels.

Mibálí baákotímola libélá ya kabiné na plósi na mpáu.
The men are digging a toilet with picks and shovels.

Mibálí baákokunda tiyó ya máí.
The men are burying a water pipe.

M1 bálí baákokunda tiyó ya gaz.
The men are burying a gas pipe.

Mibálí baákopíka nzeté ya telefon.
The men are setting up a telephone pole.

Biléi bizali elangí.
The food tastes good.

Biléi bizali sunkálí.
The food tastes sweet.
UNIT 16 LINGALA

Bilé1 bizalí nga1. The food tastes sour.
Bilé1 bizalí bololo. The food tastes bitter.
Bilé1 bizalí ya kopolö. The food is rotten.
Bilé1 bizalí na móngwa. The food is salted.
Bilé1 bizalí na móngwa míngi. The food is too salty.

dzeké steamshovel; earth mover, dump truck
-tóka to draw water, dig out/up
mabelé earth, ground, floor
-timola to dig (up), turn over the soil
libulú, ma- well, pit, hole, trench, toilet
-tonda to be(come) full, filled, fill
libélá, ma- well, pit, hole, trench, toilet
kamíó (camión) truck
mpáu, mpác, m- shovel, spade
piósí, (pioche) pick, pickaxe
kabiné (cabinet) toilet; excrement
-kunda to bury, plant
tiyó (tuyau) pipe, tube, hose, gas
'gaz' gas
nzeté, n- tree, stick, piece of wood
elengi pleasing to the senses, good taste/smell; beauty
sukáli = sugar, candy; sweet
ngal = sour(ness)
bololo = bitter(ness), sour(ness)
-po-lo = to be(come) wet, soggy, rotten, be beaten, defeated
móngwa, mi- = salt

NOTES

16.1 Subject with two verbs.

Batu balálaka áwa bakendékí lóbí.

Many subjects which have two verbs in Lingala translate into English and French as subject plus two verbs, but very often such a Lingala construction translates as subject plus adjectival relative clause plus verb, e.g., /Batu balálaka áwa bakendékí lóbí/, 'The people who live here left yesterday', literally, 'The people they live here they left yesterday'. Note that it is the first verb in this type of sentence that translates as a relative clause.

16.2 Immediate Past of /-longwa/

Alongweí epái azaláki kofwánda libósó.

The immediate past of /-longwa/ has /-e/ before the tense marker, e.g., /alongweí/, 'he has gone away'. See Note 2.9. Rule IV.

16.3 Indefinite Condition

Sóki osómbáká mókó, mbele babøngisáká mosúsú.

Indefinite or improbable condition is expressed by the intermediate past in both clauses and a particle such as /mbele/ at the beginning of the result clause, e.g., /Sóki osómbáká mókó/
mbële babongisáká mosúsú/, 'If you were to buy one (but you probably won't), then they would have the other one repaired'.

Some dialects of Lingala also express indefinite condition with the immediate past in the if-clause and an indefinite particle and the future in the result clause. Thoush the student may read or perhaps hear this, he should not use it because it does not usually occur in speech and is likely to be misunderstood.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Nzélá óyo ékoleka na Bóma. This road goes to (through) Boma.
2. Nzélá óyo éekóóma tíí na Bóma. This road goes to (as far as) Boma.
3. Avió éekóóma tíí na Boma. The airplane is going as far as Boma.
4. Avió ekómi. The airplane has (just) arrived.
5. Bayékoli ya sika bakómi. The new students have (just) arrived.
6. Bayékoli ya sika bazalí bánso bándu. The new students are all Africans/Negroes.
7. Batu balálaka áwa bazalí bánso bándu. The people who live here are all Negroes/Africans.
9. Basálí bapasólákí nzilá bakendéki lóbi. The workers who built the road left yesterday.
10. Basálí bapasólákí nzilá bakozónga lóbi. The workers who built the road will return tomorrow.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Mpó na níni libóké ya bána óyo éékozila lisúsu? Why is that group of children still waiting?
2. Libóké ya bána óyo éékozila molakísí. The group of children is
   waiting for the teacher.
3. Bána bakelásí bakosukola ndáko ya molakísí. The students will clean up
   the teacher's house.
4. Bána bakelásí bakosukola bizalelí. The students will wash off
   the chairs.
5. Babóí baákotíiya mokoibo na bizalelí. The houseboys are painting
   the chairs.
6. Babóí baákosopa mabángá na nzélá. The boys are spreading rock
   on the walkway.
7. Bangó bánsó baákosopa mabángá na nzélá. They are all spreading stone
   on the roadway.
8. Bangó bánsó baákokéndé na Coq na avíó. They are all going to Coquil-
   hatville by plane.
9. Mwána na ngái áákokéndé na Coq na avíó. My son is going to Coquilhat-
   ville by plane.
10. Mwána na ngái azalí na nguyá míngí. My son is very strong.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Alongwei epái azaláki kofwánda libosó. He (has) moved. He (has)
   changed his address.
2. Alongweí na Lovanium akómi na Kinsásá.
   He has moved from Lovanium into the old section of Leopoldville.

3. Alongweí na mosálé.
   He quit his job.

4. Alongweí na etéyelo.
   He has quit school.

5. Alongweí na mosálé ya sodá.
   He has resigned from the army.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Atíki koméla likáyá.
   He quit smoking.

2. Atíki mútuka na yé.
   He parked his car.

3. Abóyí mútuka na yé.
   He abandoned his car.

4. Abóyí mwáí.
   He has left his wife for good.

5. Atíki mwáí.
   He has left his wife at home.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Dzeké éekotíya mabelé na kamló.
   The steamshovel is loading dirt into the truck.

2. Basálí baákosopa mabelé na kamló.
   The workmen are unloading dirt from the truck.

3. Basálí baákobimisa bilóko na masíni.
   The workmen are unloading the railroad car.

   The workmen are spreading rock on the road.
5. **Kamlo ékosopa mabángá na balabalá.** The truck is dumping rock on the road.

6. **Kamlo ezalí koméma nzeté ya télefon.** The truck is carrying telephone poles.

7. **Basáli baákopika mabendé ya télefon.** The workmen are setting up telephone poles.

8. **Míbáli batélémisí mabendé ya télefon.** The men set up the telephone poles.

9. **Míbáli batélémisí madésu na nzeté.** The men set up sticks for the beans.

10. **Míbáli baténísákí libúlú na mabelé.** The men filled the hole with dirt.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6**

1. **Akeí nsíma ya ndáko.** He went to the toilet.

2. **Akeí na Bóma na mótuka.** He went to Boma by car.

3. **Akeí na Bóma na mótuka na nzílá ya síka.** He went to Boma by car by the new route.

4. **Akeí na Bóma na nzílá ya masíni.** He went to Boma by train.

5. **Akeí na Brazza na masúwa ya nsuka.** He went to Brazzaville on the last boat.

**Pattern Drill 1**

1. **Otobísí ekendé tíi wápi?** How far is the bus supposed to go?

2. **Otobísí ekóa mtí wápi?** How far is the bus supposed to go?
3. Otobisì ekóma tìì na Lovanium.
   The bus is supposed to go far as Lovanium.

4. Otobisì eútì na Lovanium
   The bus came from Lovanium.

5. Otobisì eútaka na Lovanium.
   The bus comes from Lovanium.

Pattern Drill 2

1. Sóko oyáka leló, mbéle napésaka yo nkámáも多く.
   If you were to come today, I'd give you a thousand francs.

2. Sóko osómbáká moko, mbéle napésaka yo nkámá moko.
   If you were to buy one, I'd give you a thousand francs.

3. Sóko osómbáká moko, mbéle babongisáká mosusu.
   If you were to buy one, they would have the other one repaired.

4. Sóko obongisáká ndako óyo, mbéle babongisáká mosusu.
   If you were to have this house repaired, they would have the other one repaired.

5. Sóko obongisáká ndako óyo, mbéle okokáká kótékísa yango.
   If you were to repair this house, you would be able to sell at a profit.

6. Sóko osíláká sánzá moko, mbéle okokáká kótékísa yango.
   If you were to wait a month, you would be able to sell it at a profit.

7. Sóko osíláká sánzá moko, mbéle okëndéké na Léo.
   If you waited a month, you would be able to go to Leopoldville.

8. Sóko osíláká na nkótó moko, mbéle okëndéké na Léo.
   If you had a thousand francs, you could go to Leopoldville.

9. Sóko osíláká na nkótó moko, mbéle okokáká kosómba bilambá.
   If you had a thousand francs, you could buy some clothes.

10. Sóko okëndé na Kínsásá, mbéle okokáká kosómba bilambá.
    If you went to Leopoldville, you could buy some clothes.
Unit 17
Basic Sentences

-A-
sofélę, ba-
(chauffeur)
driver, chauffeur

1. Ée! Sofélę, kangá mótuka
na yó kúná.
Hey! Driver, stop your car
over there.

-B-
2. Elókọ níni nasálí kó
gendarme? Nabómí moto?
Well, officer, what did I do?
Did I kill somebody?

-A-
mwínda
motáné
-pela
light, lamp
bright red/yellow/orange
to be on fire, burn, be lit

3. Ozálí komóna mwínda té?
Didn't you see the red light?

4. Óyo ya motáné epelí mpó
na níni?
What (do you think) red lights
are for?

5. Oyébi kótelemé mpó nakožila
moké té?
Don't you know to wait?

-B-
6. Pardon, namónáki mwínda
malámú té.
I'm sorry. I didn't see the
light very well.

-A-
7. Omóní malámú té?
You didn't see it very well?
'permis de conduire'
driver's license

8. Lakisá ngáí permis de
conduire na yó.
Show me your driver's license.

175
9. Ezali té, mpó nabandi koyékola kotámbwisa mótku káka síka. I don't have any because I've only just started to learn to drive.

10. Bōongó búuku na yó ya mpáku? And your identification book?
11. Ozáli mpé na yangó té? Don't you have it either?

12. Má, yangó óyo. Kási nainu nafútítí mpáku ya mbúla óyo té. Here, take it. But I haven't paid my tax this year yet.

13. Landá ngaí na Commune ya Kalamu. Follow me to the Kalamu Commune.

14. Té, Komisélé, mótku ezáli ya ngaí té. No, Officer, the car doesn't belong to me.
     lomándé (n-) (amende) fine, penalty
15. Lomándé ya bóńí olingi náfúta? How much of a fine do you want me to pay?

16. Ozáli na nkóto mokó síka óyo na pósí na yó? Do you have a thousand francs in your pocket right now?
BASIC COURSE

UNIT 16

17. Të, nápésa avásî, bóongó nákëndë koluka ndámbo mosúsù na mbóka.

- A -

bolókọ, ma-
makëtelé

18. Mwàna, sóko olingí bolókọ tè, tiká makëtelé mpë landá ngáí. Esíli!

- B -

I understand you, Officer.

USEFUL PHRASES

Obúngí mbëko ya nzélá.
Obúngí matéya.
Obúngí nzélá ya mbóka.
Obúngí nzélá ya kozónga na Leó.

Polísi abótólí palákì ya mótuka na yé.
Polísi abótólí mótuka na yé mpo azwi likamá na mótuka.
Mopaya akangí mótuka mpembéni na balabálá.

You've broken the traffic laws.
You don't know your lesson.
You've lost your way home.
You've lost the road to Leopoldville.
The police confiscated his auto plates.
The police confiscated his car because he had an accident.
The stranger parked his car on the side of the street.
The stranger parked his car at the corner of the street.
The stranger parked his car in the yard/driveway.
The police officer gave him a ticket because he was speeding.
The police officer gave him a ticket because he was parked illegally.
The police officer gave him a ticket because he ran into a man on a bicycle.

to forget; make a mistake, be wrong; lose, get lost, lose one's way; die
law, regulation, obligation, duty
lesson
policeman, police
to take/snatch away, confiscate, impound, pillage
plate, plaque, auto license plate
accident, danger; punishment
stranger, guest, visitor, host
mpembéni, m-
side, edge; beside, along, next to, around, near
lopango, m-
enclosure; fence; plot of land, place of residence
kovokasió (convocation)
notice, summons, traffic ticket
nkínga, n-
bicycle

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Atélémísí mótauá mpembéni na ndáko.
   He parked the car beside the house.
2. Akangísí mótauá mpembéni na ndáko.
   He stopped the car beside the house.
3. Akangísí mótauá libosó ya mwínda motáné.
   He stopped the car at the red light.
4. Mítuka mínso mikangámi libosó ya mwínda motáné.
   All the cars are stopped at the red light.
5. Mítuka mínso mikangámi mpó mwínda motáné epélí.
   All the cars are stopped because the light is red.
6. Mítuka monéne etélémí mpó mwínda motáné epélí.
   The big truck stopped because the light is red.
7. Mítuka monéne etélémí nsíma ya magazíni.
   The big truck stopped behind the store.
8. Nzela ezalí nsíma ya magazíni.
   There is a street behind the store.
   There are many people on the street.
10. Mbóka na bisú ezalí na batu míngi. There are many people in our village.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Baníngá na ngáí baákotámbóla mbangu. My friends are in a hurry.
2. Baníngá na ngáí bafútélí ngáí lománde. My friends paid the fine for me.
3. Mokonzí afútélí ngáí lománde. The chief paid the fine for me.
4. Mokonzí amóní mwínda motané té. The chief didn't see the red light.
5. Basáli bamóní mwínda motané té. The workers didn't see the red light.
6. Basáli bakeí koluka mbóngó ya sánzá. The workers have gone to get their (monthly) pay.
7. Mokakísí akeí koluka mbóngó ya sánzá. The teacher has gone to get his salary.
8. Molakísí aákopelísa mabáyá. The teacher is burning the wood.
9. Bána aákopelísa mabáyá. The boys are burning wood.
10. Bána baákcyékola kotámbwísa mátuka. The boys are learning to drive.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Bolangítí ekúfí. The blanket is worn out.
2. Bolangítí epasúkí. The blanket is torn up/worn out.
3. Sapáto epasúkí. The shoes are torn up/worn out.
4. Sapáto ekómi ya kála. The shoes are old.
5. Pataló ekómí ya kála. The pants are old.
6. Pataló ezálí motúya malámú. The pants are inexpensive.
7. Kazáka ezálí motúya malámú. The jacket is cheap.
8. Kazáka eútí na Bruxelles. The coat is from Brussels.
10. Libóké etíndámkí na avió. The package was sent by air.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Kílió níni ozálí na yangó. What pencil do you have?
2. Kílió ya náni ozálí na yangó? Whose pencil do you have?
3. Kílió ya ndéngé níni ozálí na yangó? What kind of pencil do you have?
4. Mótuka ya ndéngé níni ozálí na yangó? What kind of car do you have?
5. Mótuka níni ozálí na yangó? What make of car do you have?

Pattern Drill 1

1. Nabándí koyékola kotámbwísa mótuka kaka síka óyo. I've only just started to learn to drive.
2. Nabándí kosukola ndáko káka síka óyo. I've only just started to clean up the house.
3. Nabándí kopakola mokóbo na mésa. I've only just started to paint the table.
4. Nabándí kobíngísa masíni ya mikándá kaka síka óyo. I've only just started repairing the typewriter.
5. Nabándí kokítísa bilo ko na kámbi káka síka óyo. I've only just started unloading the truck.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Komiséle abóyi kozwá mbóngó.
   The policeman refused to accept the money.

2. Komiséle abótólí yé búuku ya mpákú.
   The policeman took away his ID card.

   The mayor of Kalamu Commune confiscated his ID card.

   The mayor of Kalamu Commune doesn't like noise.

5. Mobangé óyo abóyi makélélé.
   The old man doesn't like noise.

   The old man has been sitting here since this morning.

7. Mopaya wúná afwandí áwa tií na ntóngó.
   That stranger has been sitting here since this morning.

8. Mopaya wúná abúngi nzélá ya mbóka na yé.
   That stranger can't remember the way back to his village.

9. Motu ya mabáya abúngi nzélá ya mbóka na yé.
   The carpenter can't remember the way back to his village.

10. Motu ya mabáya abótólí ebóléli na mwána.
    The carpenter took the hammer away from the child.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Atútání na nzeté.
   He walked into a tree.

2. Mótuka etútí nzeté.
   The car crashed into a tree.

3. Mótuka etútí motu ya nkínga.
   The car hit a man on a bicycle.

4. Polísí akangí motu ya nkínga.
   The police arrested a man on a bicycle.
5. Polísí akangí sofělé aleki 
mwìnda motāné.

6. Tozalí koluka sofělé aleki 
mwìnda motāné.

7. Tozalí koluka mobálí akangí 
løpango.

8. Mopaya ayébi mobálí akangí 
løpango.

9. Mopaya ayébi kopolisa 
mwìnda.

10. Natũnĩ mwäsí ápélîsela 
gráí mwìnda.

The police arrested the driver who ran the red light.

We are looking for the driver who ran the red light.

We are looking for the man who fenced the plot of ground.

The visitor knows the man who is getting engaged.

The stranger knows how to light the lamp.

I asked the woman to light the lamp for me.
UNIT 18

Basic Sentences

-A-

tónga
to build, construct

1. Nayóki te otóngísí ndáko ya síka.
   I've heard that you've had a new house built.

-B-
sóoló
ture, real, right; truth

2. Ee, ezály ya sóoló.
   Yes, that's true.

-A-
bríkí (brique)
brick

tumba
to burn, set fire, to roast over/in a fire

3. Ezály ya bríkí ya kotumba too ya síméti?
   Is it made out of fired bricks or cement?

-B-

4. Ezály ya bríkí ya kotumbama.
   It’s made of fired bricks.

-A-
eténí, bi-

piece, part, share; room

5. Bozály na biténí bóni ndáko?
   How many rooms do you have?

-B-

   Five rooms.

184
to choose, select, elect
to choose, select, elect

Who chose the paint for your house?

It was mother who chose it.

Don't you know that women have excellent taste?

kind, sort; also, too;
as, like, such as,
similar, same sort

You're right, it's true.

Is the interior also the same color as the outside?

For what reason/why should it be?

In the dining room, it's green.
brown, dark red

In the living room, brown.

In the other rooms, gray, white, or orange.
16. Bozali boní na libótá?

17. Nání mwána ya libosó, mwási too mobálí?

- A -

How many are there in your family?

Who is the oldest child, a girl or a boy?

- B -

17. Tozali motóbá, mwána mwási moto azalí libosó.

There are six of us (children).

The oldest is a girl.

- A -

18. Bínú nyónso bokéndēke kelási, too bana misísu batikala mpó na kopésa mamá mabóko?

Do you all go to school or do some of the children stay home to give your mother a hand?

- B -

19. Mísátu ya miké nainu bakómísí bangó na kelási té.

The three smallest haven't started to school yet.

- B -

-kúta

to meet, find, come upon

20. Malámú, nakei nainu kolía, tokókútana nsíma.

Good, I'm going to eat now, we'll see each other later.


Goodby.

USEFUL PHRASES

Eténi ya kobomba bilambá ezalí motánésó.

The closet is (painted) yellow.

Eténi ya kobomba bilóko ezalí motánésó.

The storage room is tan.
Eténi ya kobomba biléi ezali bulé.
Kómbá ndáko.
Sukóla ndáko.
Púpólá putulú lîkoló ya mesá na kitî.
Kulútu na ngáí aákotânga zulunálo.
Lékî na ngáí aákotânga zulunálo.
Bokiló na ngáí aákotânga zulunálo.
Kóko na ngáí aákotânga zulunálo.
Mbanda na ngáí aákotânga zulunálo.
Bísû na yé tokómî mbanda.
Akeí ndóbo.
Akeí bokila.
Aákokâlinga makeí na kúku.
Aákotîkîsa makeí na kúku.
Aákotumba nyama.
- bómba
motánésö
bulé (bleu)
- kómbô, - kómba

The pantry is blue.
Sweep the floor.
Mop the floor.
Dust off the furniture.
My older brother is reading the paper.
My younger brother is reading the paper.
My father-in-law is reading the paper.
My grandfather is reading the paper.
My co-wife is reading the paper.
We no longer like each other. (lit.) We have become in-laws.
He has gone fishing.
He has gone hunting.
She's frying eggs in the kitchen.
She's boiling eggs in the kitchen.
She's roasting meat over the fire.
to hide, keep, store, preserve, shelter; observe, obey (law, custom)
light yellow/tan/beige
blue
to sweep, clean house, empty
-pupa | to blow, fan, winnow, make clean by blowing/shaking
kulútu, ba- | older brother/sister
-tánga | to read, count, enumerate, add up
zulunálo (journal) | newspaper, magazine
léki, ba- | younger brother/sister
bokiló, ɓakiló | parent-in-law, brother/sister-in-law, good friend, acquaintance
kóko, ba- | grandparents, grandchild
mbanda, ba- | co-wife; brother-in-law married to wife's sister, sister-in-law married to husband's brother; people who don't like each other
ndóbo, n- | fishing, fishhook
bokila, ma- | hunt(ing)
-kálinga, kálanga | to fry, bake, roast
likei, ma- | egg
kúku | kitchen
-tóko | to boil, be boiling

**NOTES**

18.1 /-zala ya/

Ezalí ya sóolló.
Ezalí ya briki ya kotumba too ya siméti?
/-zala ya/ means 'to consist of', 'be made out of', as in
the sentence above: 'It is true', literally 'It consists of the truth'; 'Is it made out of fired bricks or cement?'

18.2 Equational Sentence with Emphatic Subject

Mamá moto aponákí yangó.

Equational sentences (See Note 6.1) whose second element begin with /moto/ or /bato/ are used to give special emphasis to the subject. In this type of sentence, /moto/ often translates, 'the one who', 'the person who', as in the sentence above, 'Mother (is) the one who chose it.' /aponákí yangó/ is an adjective relative clause (See Note 5.10) in this sentence.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Libótá ezalí na eténi ya kolía.
   The family is in the dining room.

2. Libótá ezalí na eténi ya kolámbo bilóko.
   The family is in the kitchen.

3. Bakulútu na yó ya mibálí bazalí na eténi ya kolámbo bilóko.
   Your older brothers are in the kitchen.

4. Bakulútu na yó ya mibálí bazalí na biténi ya kolálà.
   Your brothers are in their bedroom.

5. Baléki na ngáí bazalí na biténi ya kolálà.
   My younger brothers and sisters are in their bedrooms.

   My younger brothers are firing bricks.

7. Batu bazalí kotumba briki.
   The men are firing bricks.
8. Batu batôngákí ndáko na 
bríki ya kotumba. The men built the house of 
fired brick.
9. Ndáko etôngámáká na bríki 
y ya kotumba. The house was built out of 
fired brick.
10. Ndáko etôngámáká na mabángá 
ná mabáýá. The house was built out of 
stone and wood.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Mwána amônánáká líbosó 
y ya ndáko. The boy was seen in front of 
the house.
2. Mótuka emônánáká líbosó 
y ya ndáko. The car was seen in front of 
the house.
3. Mótuka ebongísámáká na 
mécanicien. The truck was repaired by 
the mechanic.
4. Avió ebongísámáká na 
mécanicien. The plane was repaired by 
the mechanic.
5. Avió eyokámáká na bána. The airplane was heard by 
the children.
6. Basáleli bayokámáká na 
bána. The servants were heard by 
the children.
7. Basáleli batúnámáká na 
mokonzi. The servants were questioned 
by the chief.
8. Basáli batúnámáká na 
mokonzi. The workers were questioned 
by the chief.
9. Basáli bazalí kotúnama 
na gendarme. The workers are being questioned 
by the policeman.
10. Mwási azalí kotúnama na 
gendarme. The woman is being questioned 
by the police.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Olongí, ndáko na bango ezalí ya bríki motáné. You're right, their house is built out of red bricks.
2. Olongí na likambo olobí. You're correct in what you said.
3. Násála níni na likambo olobí? What should I do about the thing you just mentioned?
4. Násála níni mpóo náyéba koloba Lingála? How should I go about learning Lingala?
5. Lakisá ngáí mayéle mpóo náyéba koloba Lingála. Show me a good system for learning Lingala.
6. Lakisá ngáí mayéle ya kolámba mpondu. Show me how to cook manioc leaves.
7. Tokotúna nísína ya kolámba mpondu. We'll discuss it after fixing the manioc leaves.
8. Tokotúna nísína ya ndóbo. We'll discuss it after fishing.
9. Nakangákí mbísí míngí na ndóbo. I caught a lot of fish with a hook and line.
10. Nakangákí mbísí míngí na ebale. I caught a lot of fish in the river.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

2. Bókendé kópesa tátá nkínga akendé mósála. Go give your father the bicycle so he can go to work.
3. Bóngisélá tátá nkínga akendé mósála. Fix the bicycle for your father so he can go to work.
5. Babúngisélí yé lokolo ya sapatu.  
His shoes were lost.

Somebody lost the child's ball.

7. Tatá ya Polo aákokendé kosómbela mwána ndembó.  
Paul's father is going to buy the child a ball.

8. Tatá ya Polo aákokendé kosómbela ngáí makei ya nsósó na zándu.  
Paul's father is going to the market to buy me some eggs.

9. Mbanda aákokendé kosómbela ngáí makei ya nsósó na zándu.  
My co-wife has gone to the market to buy me some eggs.

10. Mbanda atumbí nyama na kíku.  
My co-wife roasted the meat in the kitchen.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Nakótísí mátuka na ndáko na yango.  
I put the car in the garage/carport.

2. Nakótísí mátuka na káti ya lopango.  
I parked the car in the yard/driveway.

The children are playing in the yard.

4. Bána baákosasakana na libándá ya Stade Baudouin.  
The boys are going to play at Stade Baudouin.

5. Lisano eékosalama na libándá ya Stade Baudouin.  
The game is going to be played at Stade Baudouin.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Nazalaka na ndáko ya nsúka. I live in the last house.
5. Nazalaka na ndáko wáná na lóbókó ya mobálí. I live in the house on the right.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Etéyelo ezálí ya briki ya kotumba. The school is made of fired bricks.
2. Etéyelo etóngámáki ntángu ya elanga. The school was built during the dry season.
3. Ndáko ya kolála etóngámáki ntángu ya elanga. The bedroom was built during the dry season.
4. Ndáko ya kolála ezálí mál ya mpondu. The bedroom is green.
5. Efándeli ya kelázi ezálí mál ya mpondu. The desks are green.
6. Efándeli ya kelázi ezálí sokolá. The desks are brown.
7. Eténi ya kobómба biléi ezálí sokolá. The pantry is painted brown.
8. Eténi ya kobomba b1éléi ekombamákí.
   The pantry has been swept.

   All the bedrooms had been swept.

10. Ndáko nyǒnsọ ya kolála bisukwámákí na bakulútu na ngaí ya básí.
    All the bedrooms were mopped by my older sisters.
Unit 19

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Monika!

-B-

2. Mama!

-A-

3. Wápí yö?

-B-


-A-

5. Sálá nökí ösómbela ngáí bilóko na zándu.

-B-

-zoka

-nökí

fast, quick, prompt

Hurry up and go get me some things at the market.

to be injured, to be touched

finger, toe

Send Marie, I hurt my fingers yesterday.

mosai, monsai,

mosapi, mi-

lóbí na minsai.
UNIT 19

7. Omízokísáki na níní?  What did you hurt yourself with?
   -B-
   With a table knife.

8. Na mbélí ya mésa.  Where were you?
   -A-
   -B-

9. Wápí epái?  'ville'
   city, town, downtown

10. Lóbí na ndáko ya moníngá  Yesterday at one of my friend's
    na ngáí mókö na 'ville.
    house in town.
   -A-

11. Boongo, ókozíla níní mpó  Well, why are you waiting to
    ókendé na múnganga?
    go to the doctor's?
   -B-

12. Nakokendé nsíma sókó  I'll go later when I've finished
    nasílísí komísukola. taking my bath.
   -A-

13. María, kamátá kitúnga  Marie, take the market basket
    ósóbela ngáí bilókö  and go buy me some things
    na zándu. at the market.
   -B-

   lipúta, ma-
   pagne, long wrap-around
   skirt
   litambála, kitambála,
   handkerchief, towel, cloth,
   ma-
   napkin

196
I'll also buy myself the pagne and headscarf that I saw.

USEFUL PHRASES

Motu ya kabínda aákókáta monkolóto na kiliyó.
The carpenter is drawing a line with a pencil.

Motu ya kabínda azéngí ndámbo ya libáýá.
The cabinetmaker cut off a piece of the wood.

Motu ya kabínda akobólí libáýá na biténi.
The carpenter cut the piece of wood in half.

Mópe akangí gbagba fotó.
The priest took a picture of the bridge.

Mópe akangí bwátu fotó.
The priest took a picture of the dugout canoe.

Mópe akangí mokíli fotó na masuwa.
The priest took a picture of the mainland from the boat.

Mópe azáli kolúka bwátu.
The priest is rowing the boat.

Mópe azáli kolúka nkái.
The priest is rowing.

Mamá mokéngeli aákópusa mwána moké na púsupúsu.
The governoress is pushing the baby in the stroller.

Mamá mokéngeli aákomélísa mwána moké mílíki.
The babysitter is feeding the baby milk.

Mamá móbókóli aákolátísa mwána moké bilambá.
The governess is dressing the baby.

Mamá móbókóli aákolakísa mwána kokáta mái.
The babysitter is teaching the child to swim.

Abóngólí Angelé na Lingála.
He translated it from English into Lingála.
Abóngólí káwa na sukálí. He stirred sugar into his coffee.
Abóngólí kíti. He turned the chair around.
Akwéí na kíti. He turned over in the chair.
Akwéisí kíti na mabelé. He fell out of the chair.

kabínda, ba- carpenter, cabinet-maker
-káta to cut, chop
monkolóto, m1- line
-zénga to cut off, chop off
mópë, mómpë, ba-(mon père) priest (Catholic)
gbagba bridge
fotó (photo) photograph, picture
bwátu, ómátu dugout canoe, native boat
mokílí, m1- mainland, land, interior,
-luka inland, world
to row/paddle a boat
nkáí, n- paddle, oar
-púsa (pousser?) to push, shove
púsupúsu (pousse-pousse) pushcart, baby carriage,
mílíkí stroller
-mbókóló milk
to bring up, raise, rear,
Angelé (anglais) feed, breed (animal)
Englîsh English
cáwa coffee
-kwéya to fall; be involved in/lose
a lawsuit
NOTES

19.1 Reflexive

Nazalí komísukola nzótu.

The reflexive prefix /-mi/ means 'to do something to/for oneself'. /-mi/ is prefixed to the base and occurs with all persons, e.g., /Nazalí komísukola nzótu/, 'I'm taking a bath', literally, 'I'm washing myself the body'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Namísukolaka nzótu na ntóngó nyónsq.
   I take a bath every morning.
2. Namísukolaka nzótu na mpókwa nyónsq.
   I take a bath every evening.
3. Amísombelaka nyama na mpókwa nyónsq.
   He buys some meat for himself every evening.
4. Amísombelaka nyama epái ya batékinyama.
   He buys meat for himself at the butcher's (meatsellers').
5. Amízokisi epái ya batékinyama.
   He injured himself at the butcher's.
6. Amízokisi na mbélí ya mésa.
   He injured himself with a table knife.
7. Amísálélí ekéko na mbélí ya mésa.
   He made himself a statue with the knife.
8. Amísálélí ndáko ya mabáýá.
   He built himself a frame house.
   We are going to buy ourselves a frame house.
10. Tokomísombela bilambá ya sika.
    We are going to buy ourselves some new clothes.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ndako ya bisú ezali mpembe ni na nzela.
   Our house is near the road.

2. Tomoní bána bakalasi mpembe ni na nzela.
   We saw some school children near the road.

3. Tomoní bána bakalasi na motei na bangó.
   We saw some school children with their teacher.

4. Bayekoli bánedéki na ville na motei na bangó.
   The students have gone into town with their teacher.

5. Bayekoli bánedéki na ville komisombela sapatu.
   The students have gone into town to buy themselves some shoes.

   My brother is waiting to buy some shoes.

   My brother is waiting for me out on the street.

8. Atikí ngáí na nzela.
   He let me out at the road.

   He left the clothes at the house.

10. Atindéli ngáí bilambá na ndako.
    She sent me the clothes at the house.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Nazali komitúna sokó mbúla ezali konóko.
   I wonder if it's raining.

2. Nazali komitúna sokó akoyáa.
   I wonder if she's coming.

3. Nazali komitúna mpó na nini ayáki lóbi.
   I wonder why he came yesterday.
4. Nazali komituna epáí azali. I wonder where he is.

5. Nazali komituna sokó azali nána. I wonder who he is.


8. Nazali komituna ntángu nínl akozónga. I wonder when he'll get back.

9. Nazali komituna sokó ayébi epáí tozali. I wonder if he knows where we are.

10. Nazali komituna sokó azwi mokandá. I wonder if he received the letter.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Mópe amisómbéli masini ya fotó. The priest bought himself a camera.

2. Mópe abóngoli mokandá ya Angelé na Falansé. The priest translated the letter from English to French.

3. Moyékwisí abóngoli mokandá ya Angelé na Falansé. The instructor translated the letter from English into French.

4. Moyékwisí akwéi na kití. The instructor turned over in his chair.

5. Mofútélí akwéi na kití. The tenant turned over in his chair.

6. Mofútélí apésí ngái mbôngo ya ndáko. The tenant paid me the rent.
7. Kabinda apési ngái mbôngo ya ndáko.
   The carpenter paid me the rent.
8. Kabinda abóngoláki ebóbèlbil ya buuku.
   The carpenter turned the bookcase around.
9. Bó1 apúpóli káti ya ebóbèlbil ya buuku.
   The houseboy dusted the inside of the bookcase.
10. Bó1 apúpóli likoló ya ebóbèlbil ya basání.
    The houseboy dusted the outside of the china cabinet.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Abóngoli kawa na sukálí.
   He stirred sugar into his coffee.
2. Mónika abóngoli kawa na sukálí.
   Monique stirred sugar into her coffee.
3. Mónika slingi litambála na lipúta.
   Monique wants a pagne and kerchief.
4. Léki na ye aaękósomba mpé litambála na lipúta.
   Her younger sister is also going to buy a pagne and kerchief.
5. Léki na ye aaękósomba mpé mbélí ya kuku.
   Her younger sister is also going to buy a butcher knife.
   I cut my finger with a butcher knife.
7. Namíkatí monsai na monoko ya ndáko.
   I cut my finger on the door.
8. Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya mpondu na monoko ya ndáko.
   We will paint the door again.
9. Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya mpondu na bilamba ya sika.
   We are going to dye the new dress green.
10. Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya malálá na bilamba ya sika.
    We are going to dye the new dresses orange.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Mamá mokéngélí aákopúsa mwána moké na púsupúsu. The babysitter is pushing the baby in the buggy.
2. Koko mwási aákopúsa mwána moké na púsupúsu. The grandmother is pushing the baby in the buggy.
3. Koko mwási aákolátisa mwána moké bilambá. The grandmother is dressing the baby.
4. Tatá mwási aákolátisa mwána moké bilambá. The (baby's) aunt is dressing the baby.
5. Tatá mwási aákoléisa mwána moké. The (baby's) aunt is feeding the baby.
6. Kulútú mwási aákoléisa mwána moké. The (baby's) older sister is feeding the baby.
7. Kulútú mwási akangí mwána moké fotó. The (baby's) older sister took a picture of the baby.
8. Mópé akangí mwána moké fotó. The priest took the baby's picture.
9. Mópé szaláki kotánda zulunálo ya léló. The priest was reading today's paper.
10. Kabínda atóngí ndáko ya bisú szaláki kotánda zulunálo ya léló. The carpenter who built our house was reading today's paper.

19.2 Compound Agent Nouns

/ batékinyama/ is a compound agent noun, meaning 'meatsellers'. The agentive element is first and the qualifying noun second, e.g., / batékinyama/ is literally 'sellersmeat', and /molukinyama/, 'hunter' is literally 'searcheranimal'. Both nouns in this type of compound have their class prefixes, singular and plural, as the case
may be. Such a compound noun is written as a single word in this manual, but regular orthography writes two words.

19.3 Kinship Terminology.

Tatá mwásí aákolélsa mwána moké.

The system of classifying relatives used by speakers of Lingala is quite different from that used by speakers of English. Consequently, translation of kinship terms can only be approximated. In the example above, 'The (baby's) aunt is feeding the baby', /tatá mwásí/ corresponds only partially to 'aunt'. It means 'father's sister' and certain other female relatives of one's father, e.g., 'paternal grandfather's brother's daughter'.

One's mother's sister is /mamá/ i.e., 'mother', likewise /tatá/ is also 'father's brother.' There is a special term for 'maternal uncle', /nóko/, (Cf. Dialogue 6.)

There is not sufficient space in this manual for a detailed discussion of social organization and kinship terminology. Interested students can read a standard anthropological work, such as Murdock, G.P., Social Structure, Macmillan, New York, 1949.
Unit 20

Basic Sentences

-A-

'ambassade'  
embassy

1. Áwa Ambassade ya Amérique? Is this the American Embassy?

-B-

2. Yangó mpenzá. Oókoluka níni? Indeed it is. What do you want?

-A-

víza (visa)  
visa

mobémbo, mí-
journey, trip


-B-

4. Okendé kosála níni kúná? What do you intend to do there?

-A-

5. Nakeí koyékcola. I'm leaving to go to school.

-B-

6. Osíli omíkomísí nkombó na université óyo okokendé? Have you already been admitted to the university to which you are going?

-A-

7. É, na Université ya California. Yes, at the University of California.
8. Eloko nini okoyekola?

What are you going to study?


Economics.

10. Mbula boni okoumela kunu?

How many years are you going to stay?

11. Minel too mitanu.

Four or five.

12. Nani akofutela yo kelasi, baboti?

Who will pay for your schooling, your parents?


I have received a scholarship from the American Government.

14. Malamu, naakotondo yo mobembo malamu o Amerique, mpé oyekolaka makasi.

Fine, I hope you have a good trip to America, and study hard.

15. Melesi, otikala malamu, sokó tokomonana lisusu tê.

Thanks, and goodbye, in case we don't see each other again.
USEFUL PHRASES

Moyángelí ya bánkí atóndísi ngái fíísí.
The bank manager had me fill out some forms.

Moyángelí ya bánkí atóndíselí ngái fíísí.
The bank manager filled out some forms for me.

Moyángelí ya bánkí apésí ngái fíísí mpó nátónísa.
The bank manager gave me some forms to fill out.

Ífo názwa mbóngó na bánkí.
I have to withdraw some money from the bank.

Ífo názwela mwána na ngái ya mobálí mbwá.
I have to get my son a dog.

Ífo názwela mwána na ngái ya mwásí nkóndókó.

Tolobákílóbákí butú mobímba.

Totábólítábólí butú mobímba.

Tobétkité tákolo butú mobímba.

Tokátí nzeté ndámmbondsámbo.

Tokátí nzeté biténibiténi.

Nakanákí nákénde.

Nakanísákí mbúla éékokatana konókó.

Nakanákí kosómba mótku na sánzá elekí.

Naákokana kosómba mótku na sánzá ekoyáa.

Naákokana násómba mótku na sánzá óyo.

I wish I could have bought a car last month.

I wish I could buy a car next month.

I wish I could buy a car this month.
-yângela  

to manage, administrate, arrange

bânkî (banque)  

bank

fîsî (fîche)  

form, blank

îfo (îl faut)  

it is necessary to, one has to has to

mbwà, m-  

dog

nkândôkô, n-  

cat

NOTES

20.1 /îfo/ plus Subjunctive

îfo názwa mbîngô na bânkî.

/îfo/, French, îl faut', 'it's necessary to', 'one has to', followed a Lingala subjunctive occurs very frequently, as in the sentence above, 'I have to withdraw money from the bank'. /ebôngî/ and /îfo/ may be freely substituted for one another in this type of construction.

20.2 Reduplication for Intensity

Tolobâkîlôbâkî butû míngî.

The base of a stem may be reduplicated or doubled for intensity, e.g., /tolobâkîlôbâkî/ 'we chatted', 'we talked and talked'. In a reduplicated stem, only the tone of the first syllable of the first base is fixed. Other syllables have tones as described in Note 2.2.

20.3 Wishes, Intentions, Plans

Nakanâkî nákêndê

Wishes, intentions, and plans are expressed by /-kâna/ or
/-kánisa/, e.g., the sentence above translates, 'I have decided to go', 'I wish I could go', 'I intend to go', 'I believe I will go'.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1**

1. Oyébí motu mókò na Amérigue?
   Do you know anyone in America?
2. Oyébí Ambassade ya Amérigue?
   Do you know where the American Embassy is?
3. Áwa Ambassade ya Amérigue?
   Is this the American Embassy?
4. Áwa esiká ya kobwaka mikánda?
   Is this the post office?
5. Azalí esiká ya kobwaka mikánda?
   Has he gone to the post office?
6. Azalí kobôngisa bilòko mpó na mobembo.
   He is packing his things for a trip.
7. Bamosúsu bazalí kobôngisa bilòko mpó na mobembo.
   The others are packing their bags.
   The others are (sitting) at the table.
   The doctor is (standing) by the table.
10. Monganga azalí kosálisa motu amizokísáki.
    The doctor is taking care of the man who hurt himself.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2**

1. Nasílisí mosálá na ngáí.
   I've just finished my work.
2. Nasílí kosálá mosálá na ngáí.
   I've already finished my work.
3. Nakeí kosálá mosálá na ngáí.
   I'm (just) leaving for work.
   I'm getting back to work. I'm going to continue working.
5. Nazalí kosílisá mosálá na ngáí.
   I'm about to finish my work.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Naákoleka mpembéni na ndáko. I'm going by (near) the house.
2. Naákoleka na katikatí na ndáko.
3. Naákobíma na ndáko. I'm coming out of the house.
5. Naákotíka na ndáko.
6. Nakeí na ndáko. I'm entering the house. I'm going home.
7. Nakeí ó ndáko. I'm going to(ward) the house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Azali ó esíka ya kobwáka mikanda. He is at the post office.
2. Akendéki ó esíka ya kobwáka mikanda.
3. Akendéki ó zándo. He went to the market.
4. Nazali kokendé ó zándo. I'm on my way to the market.
5. Nazali kokendé ó Amérique. I'm going to America.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Babéngáká ye Polo. They named him Paul. His name is Paul.
2. Babéngí ye Polo. They called him Paul (by mistake).
3. Babéngí bilóko na Mpútú. They ordered some things from Europe.
4. Babëngi ngái na téléfon na Mputú. They phoned me from Europe.

5. Atéléfônákí ngái na Mputú. He phoned me from Europe.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Tolobákilóbákí míngi. We chatted a long time.

2. Batambólitambólí míngi. They walked a very long way.

3. Batambólitambólí mokolo mobimba. They walked the whole day.

4. Motu asáláki mokolo mobimba. The man worked all day.

5. Motu asálalaka mıkolo nyónso. The man worked every day.


7. Mwási amísombokélí bifândeli ya mabáya. The woman bought herself some wooden chairs.

8. Mwási amísombokélí sapáto ya sika. The woman bought herself some new shoes.

9. Apésí bangó sapáto ya sika. She gave them new shoes.

10. Apésí bangó matambála ya kala. She gave them some old headscarfs.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Ebôngi nákendé na avi. I have to go by plane.

2. Ífo nákendé na avi. I have to go by plane.

3. Ífo nákendé kokamata mwási akyaa na avi. I have to go get my wife who'll be arriving by plane.

4. Ebôngi nákendé kokamata mwási akyaa na avi. I have to go get my wife who'll be arriving by plane.
5. Ebongi lóbi na ntongó alongwa na mpóngi na ntángu malámu.
   He has to get up early tomorrow morning.

6. Ífo lóbi na ntongó alongwa na mpóngi ntángu malámu.
   He has to get up early tomorrow morning.

7. Ífo batondisa fisí libosó ya kokendè.
   They had to fill out some forms before leaving.

8. Ebongi batondisa fisí libosó ya kokendè.
   They had to fill out some forms before leaving.

   We have to plow the field today.

10. Ífo tóbóngola leló mabelé ó lisálá.
    We have to plow the field today.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Nakanísakí mbúla eékokatana konóko.
   I wish it would stop raining.

2. Nakanísakí nakaká kosómba mótkua ya síka.
   I wish I could buy a new car.

   I wish I could buy a new car.

   I wish I could go.

5. Nakanáki kosómba mótkua na sánzá elekí.
   I wish I could have bought a car last month.

   I wish I could buy a car next month.

7. Nakanísí akosómba mótkua na sánzá ekoyáa.
   I think he will buy a car next month.
8. Nakanísí akoyáa na sánzá ekoyáa.
I believe he's coming next month.

I thought he was coming last month.

I wish he had come when we lived at Boma.
Unit 21

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Ekomeli na ngái ebungi. My pencil is lost. Have you
   Omôniyangó tê?
   seen it?

-B-

2. Tê, otiyi yangó epâi
   wâpi?
   No, where did you put it?

-A-

3. Natikâki yangó likolô
   ya mesa, kâsi sika
   áwa ezalî tê.
   I put it on the table, but it
   isn't there now.

-B-

4. Omônî na nsé ya mesa?
   Ntângu mosûsú ekwéî
   na nsé.
   Did you look under the table?
   Maybe it fell off.

-A-

5. Óo, yangó wâna. Elâli
   na nsé ya mesa kâsi
   mpembéni ya ndâko.
   Oh, there it is. It's lying
   under the table next to the
   wall.

-B-

-gumba
to fold, bend, stoop

-lokotô
to pick up, gather, collect
6. Gumbámá na nsé ọlọkọtọ yangó. Òókozila náni?

Stoop down and pick it up. Who are you waiting for?

-A-

7. Ekwéí mosíká nákóma té.

It's fallen way back.

-B-

8. Yáká topúsa mésa mpembéní.

Come, let's move the table sideways.


Go get a stick outside to rake it out with. I'm very tired.

-A-

10. Sókó nanyákóli ndáko na nzeté, etálí yó ëë.

If I scratch the wall with the stick, it's your responsibility.

-B-

nkóo, nkó, n-

intend, malice, purpose, will

11. Bọongó oókosála na nkó?

Well, are you going to do it on purpose?

boyé

thus, so

12. Sókó boyé, tíká yangó epóló wáná.

If that's the case, let it rot there.

-A-

13. Ndéngé níní nátíka?

Why should I get it?
14. Sokí boye, defísá ngái 
ekomélí na yó mókó, 
násála mísála na ngái. 

If that's the case, lend me 
one of your pencils so I 
can do my homework.

-B-

15. Kamátá! 

Take one!

USEFUL PHRASES

Ezalí na efelo. 
Ezalí penepéné ya efelo. 
Ezalí katikati ya efelo. 
Akátísí zámba. 
Atámbólí na zámba. 

It's near the wall.

Akeí na zámba. 

He went through the forest.

Béndá mpéma. 

He took a walk outside. He's 
gone hunting.

Bimísá mpéma. 

He went into the interior. 

Tómblárá rádio òtía mpembéni. 

He's gone hunting.

Fungólá rádio. 

Inhale.

Kangá rádio. 

Exhale.

Kangá masíní ya kokaukísa 
bilambá. 

Pick up the radio and put 
it over there.

Fungólá masíní ya kokaukísa 
bilambá. 

Turn the radio on.

Pelísá mwínda. 

Turn the radio off.

Turn the clothes drier off.

Light the lamp. Turn the 
light(s) on.
Bomá mwínda.  
Extinguish the lamp. Turn  
the light(s) off.

Tíyá prise ya frígó.  
Connect the refrigerator.

Tíyá móto na litúká.  
Turn the stove on.

Tíyá prise.  
Connect the plug.

Longólá prise.  
Disconnect the plug.

Béndá prise.  
Disconnect the plug.

Béndá prise ya frígó.  
Disconnect the refrigerator.

Bomá litúká.  
Turn the stove off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>efelo, bi-</td>
<td>wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penepéné</td>
<td>near, close, by, against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>katikáti</td>
<td>in between, in the middle/center of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zamba</td>
<td>woods, forest, jungle;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interior, outside, country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpéma, m-</td>
<td>breath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tóbala</td>
<td>to pick up, lift, carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rádio, radió</td>
<td>radio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kauka, -kaoka</td>
<td>to be(come) dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frígó (frigo)</td>
<td>refrigerator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>litúká, ma-</td>
<td>three stones used to cook on, cook stove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'prise'</td>
<td>plug (electrical)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.1 Double Spatial Relationships

Eláli na nse ya mésa kási mpembéni ya ndáko.

When specifying the location of objects in relation to two other objects, (1) a particle such as /kási/, 'but', or (2) a
pause, /,/, occurs between the two reference locations, or (3) one reference location is in a subordinate clause, e.g., (1) /Eláli na nse ya mésa kásí mpembéni ya ndáko/, 'It's lying under the table (but) next to the wall.', (2) /Eláli na nse ya mésa, mpembéni ya ndáko/, 'It's lying under the table (,) next to the wall'. or (3) /Bizáláki likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa./, 'They were on the book (which is) on the table.'

21.2 Partitive

mókó na káti na bínu.

míbalé na káti na bangó

/...na káti na/ya.../ is a partitive construction, i.e., it refers to some or part of a group or whole, e.g., /mókó na káti na bínu/, 'one of you', /míbalé na káti na bangó/, 'two of them'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Ekomelí na ngái ebúngí. My pencil is lost.
2. Mwána ya mobálí abúngí. The boy is lost.
3. Mwána ya mobálí akwéi. The boy fell off the bed.
   na mbétu.
4. Ekomelí ya mál ya mokándá ekwéi na mbétu. The pen fell off the bed.
5. Ekomelí ya mál ya mokándá ekwéi na nse ya mésa. The pen fell under the table.
7. Mokándá eútí na tatá. The letter is from my father.
8. Mbóngó eútí na tatá. The money is from my father.
9. Mbóngó ekoki té. There isn't enough money.
10. Máí ekoki té. There isn't enough water.
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ezali na nsé ya kíti kási mpembéni ya ndáko. It's under the chair next to the wall.

2. Ezali na nsé kási na káti ya mésa mibalé. It's on the floor between the two desks.

3. Bizalákí na nsé kási na káti ya mésa mibalé. They were on the floor between the two tables.

4. Bizalákí likoló ya búuku òyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa. They were on the book on the table.


7. Nazwákí yango na káti ya búuku òyo ezalákí penépépé ya télétôn. I found it in a book by the telephone.

8. Nazwákí yango epái otíkákí. I found it when you left it.


Pattern Drill 1

1. Ekomelí eláli na nsé ya mésa. The pencil is under the table.

2. Ekomelí eláli na likoló ya mésa. The pencil is on the table.

3. Ekomelí eláli na naima ya mésa. The pencil is behind the table.
UNIT 21 LINGALA

4. Ekomeli eláli na libosó ya mész. The pencil is in front of the table.
5. Ekomeli eláli na mpembéni ya mész. The pencil is lying near the table.
6. Ekomeli eláli na nsúka ya mész. The pencil is lying at the edge of the table.
7. Ekomeli eláli penepené na mész. The pencil is lying (right) by the table.
8. Ekomeli eláli mosiká na mész. The pencil is a long way from the table.
9. Ekomeli elálélí mész. The pencil is leaning against the table.
10. Ekomeli ezalí na káti ya mész. The pencil is in the table.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Balokótí nzete na libándá mpó na kobénda ekomelí. They picked up a stick outside to rake the pencil out with.
2. Kamátá nzete na libándá mpó na kobénda ekomelí. Get a stick outside to rake the pencil out with.
3. Kamátá ekomelí na ngáí mókó ósála na yango. Take one of my pencils to do your work with.
   (Take pencil of me one, you work with it.)
4. Zwa ekomelí na ngáí mókó ósála na yango. Take one of my pencils to do your homework with.
7. Bósála mosálá na bínu libosó mollíli ékwéya. Do the work before night falls.
8. Ebo nga moko na kati na
   binu asilisa masala
   liboso molili ekweya.

9. Ebo nga moko na kati na
   binu asilisa masala
   liboso moli eblind.

10. Ifo mibale na kati na
    bangoma basilisa masala
    liboso moli eblind.

   One of you has to finish the
   work before night falls.

   One of you has to finish the
   job before the sun rises.

   Two of them have to finish
   the job before the sun
   comes up.

Pattern Drill 2

1. Yaka kosilisa nga kti
   nalongola mesa.

2. Yaka osilisa nga kti
   nalongola mesa.

3. Yaka kobendisa nga kti
   sanduku.

4. Yaka obendisa nga kti
   sanduku.

5. Yaka kofwanda nga.

6. Yaka ofwanda nga.

7. Yaka kogumbisa nga kti
   bilambaya mbetu.

8. Yaka ogumbisa nga kti
   bilambaya mbetu.

9. Yaka togumba bilambaya
    mbetu.

10. Yaka tobenda sanduku.

   Come help me move the table
   out.

   Come help me move the table
   out.

   Come help me move the trunk.

   Come help me move the trunk.

   Come over for a chat. Come
   over and keep me company.

   Come over for a chat. Come
   over and keep me company.

   Come help me fold the sheets.

   Come help me fold the sheets.

   Come, let's fold the sheets.

   Come, let's move the trunk.
Pattern Drill 3

1. Ezálí likoló ya mésa, penépené ya tási.
   It's on the table next to the cup.

2. Ezálí likoló ya mésa, kási penépené ya tási.
   It's on the table next to the cup.

3. Ezálí na mabelé, penépené ya mónoko ya ndáko.
   It's on the floor by the door.

4. Ezálí na mabelé, kási penépené ya mónoko ya ndáko.
   It's on the floor by the door.

5. Ezálí likoló ya mésa, na káti ya búuku míbalé.
   It's on the table between the books.

6. Ezálí likoló ya mésa, kási na káti ya búuku míbalé.
   It's on the table between the books.

7. Ezálí na káti ya linzanza, na nse ya mbétu.
   It's in a box under the bed.

8. Ezálí na káti ya linzanza, kási na nse ya mbétu.
   It's in a box under the bed.

   It's on a plate in the window.

10. Ezálí na káti ya sání, kási likoló ya linínisa.
    It's on a plate in the window.
Unit 22

Basic Sentences

-A-
1. Otobisí óyo ezálí kokëndë wápi?
   Where is this bus going?

-B-
2. Marensa. Olíngí ókëndë wápi?
   To Marensa. Where do you want to go?

-A-
3. Kimwënsa. Sóko nakamáti yangó nakokómá té?
   To Kimwenza. If I take it, won't I get there?

-B-
4. Okokómá, kási nóki té, mpó okokíta mbala míngí na nzélé.
   You'll get there, but not fast because you'll (have to) change busses several times on the way.

-A-
5. Otobisí mosúsú óyo ekëndëkë mbala móki na Kimwënsa ezálí?
   Is there another bus that goes directly to Kimwenza?

-B-
6. Sóko olíngí óyo wáná, okozíla mwáa ngônga míngí na esíká otëlémi.
   If you want that one, you'll (have to) wait quite a while where you are standing.

-A-
7. Okanísí ngônga bóní?
   How long do you think?
8. Nayebi te, mp'o otobisi mok' ya Kimwenza eleki mwaa sika oyo.
   -B-
   I don't know because a bus to Kimwenza went by just a moment ago.

9. Yebis'a ngai nainu, otobisi ezalaka mp'e malamu na katla?
   -A-
   Tell me, is the interior of this bus clean?

-B-

10. Ezali malamu, mabe nde makalele mingi.
    -A-
    It's clean, only there's lots of noise.

-B-

11. Longwa awa tii na Kimwenza baarrets bimali boni?
    -A-
    From here to Kimwenza how many stops are there?

-B-

    -A-
    I believe only two or three.

-B-

13. Talala ngai nainu kunu, oyo wana bus ya Kimwenza?
    -B-
    Look over there, isn't that the bus to Kimwenza?

    -B-
    You're in luck today, it's the Kimwenza bus.
USEFUL PHRASES

Epaí wápi bazwáká takší?
Epaí wápi gare ya otobísí ezálí?
Epaí wápi gare ya masíní ezálí?
Epaí wápi libándá ya avió ezálí?
Epaí wápi libóngó ya masúwa ezálí?

Where is the taxi stand?
Where is the bus station?
Where is the train station?
Where is the airport?
Where is the ferry crossing?
Where is the harbor?

Tíá kíti ya bíbendé na balásání.
Tíá kíti ya nkéklé na balásání.
Tíá ekòlo ya nkéklé na balásání.
Masó akótóbóla ndéòló lininísa na efelo.
Masó akótóbóla lininísa na efelo mòkòlò nsíma ya lóbi.
Masó akótóbóla lininísa na efelo nsíma ya mìkòlò míshátu.
Masó atóbólákí lininísa na efelo lóbílòbí eleki.
Masó atóbólákí lininísa na efelo mìkòlò míshátu mìleki.
Lókóto matókó.
Lókóto nkóní.
Lókóto bitéñí ya talátála.

Put the metal chairs on the veranda.
Put the wicker chairs on the veranda.
Put the basket on the porch.
The mason will cut a window in the wall some time in the future.
The mason will cut a window in the wall the day after tomorrow.
The mason will cut a window in the wall three days from now.
(See Note 22.2.)
The mason cut a window in the wall the day before yesterday.
The mason cut a window in the wall three days ago.
Pick up the sleeping mats.
Gather some firewood.
Pick up the pieces of the mirror.
taksi (taxi)  
taxicab

gare  
station

libôngó, ma-
shore, quay, wharf, dock
balasâni
veranda, porch; hat brim

nkókóló, n-
cane, reed, liana, wickerwork
masó (maçon)
mason, bricklayer
-tóboló

to pierce, puncture; speak ill

ndélé

some time, in the future

litóko, ma-
mat, sleeping mat
nkóni, n-
firewood
talatála

mirror, pane of glass, spectacles,
lamp, chimney

NOTES

22.1 /longwá áwa tii na Kimwénza/
Review Notes 8.9 and 9.5

22.2 /nsíma ya nkólo misátu/
The meaning of the above phrase is ambiguous. The speaker
on whose speech this manual is based uses this phrase only in the
sense, 'three days from now', but many persons use this phrase to
mean 'two days from now'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Otobísí óyo ekokendè wápi? Where is this bus going?
2. Otobísí óyo ekotèlèmè na This bus is going to Marensa.
     Marénsa.
3. Otobísí óyo ekokóma na This bus will take you to
     Kimwénza.
4. Nakamátí bus na Kimwénza. I took the bus to Kimwenza.
5. Nakamátí bus mbala móko. I took the bus (only) once.
6. Okotèlèmè na arrêt mbala The bus will stop (only) once.
móko.
7. Sóko okamáti yango, okotélémé na arrét.
If you take that one, you'll stop only once (i.e., you get off at the second bus stop.)

8. Sóko okamáti yango, okoko má nóki.
If you take this one, you'll get there quickly.

If you take that one, you'll get there fast.

10. Sóko olīngi óyo wáná, ezali malámú mabé ndé makélélé.
If you take that one, it's O.K. but there's a lot of noise.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Okanísí ngonga bóní?
How long do you think it will be?

2. Okanísí arréts ya otobísí bīzalí bóní?
How many stops do you think the bus makes?

3. Arréts ya otobísí bīzalí bóní na Kīmwenzá?
How many stops are there on the way to Kīmwenza?

4. Okotón̄ga ndáko mísátu na Kīmwenzá.
You are going to build three houses at Kīmwenza.

5. Okotón̄ga ndáko mísátu sókó osómbi esíká otélémí.
If you buy the ground where you are standing, you can build three houses on it.

6. Okomíyíbísa bilókó sókó osómbi esíká otélémí.
If you buy that place, you'll be the cause of your things being stolen yourself. (i.e., knowing the danger of theft there, you would be foolish to make it easy for thieves.)

7. Okomíyíbísa bilókó sókó akótí na ndáko.
If you go into the house, you'll be responsible for anything that's stolen.
8. **Okolobaloba míngi sókó akótí na ndáko.**
   If he goes into the house, you'll talk and talk.

9. **Okolobaloba míngi ntángu akokèndè na Amérique.**
   You'll complain a lot when he goes to America.

10. **Ntángu akokèndè na Amérique nakozala malamu.**
    If you go to America, I'll be all right.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3**

1. **Motu ya kabinda akótí mwáa eténi ya libáya.**
   The carpenter cut a notch in the wood.

2. **Motu ya kabinda alongóli mwáa ndámbo ya libáya.**
   The cabinetmaker cut out a notch in the wood.

3. **Motu múkó alongóli mwáa ndámbo ya libáya.**
   Someone cut out a notch in the wood.

4. **Motu múkó afungóla kí masíni ya kosukola bilambá.**
   Someone turned on the washing machine.

5. **Motu múkó akangáki masíni ya kosukola bilambá.**
   Someone turned off the washing machine.

6. **Mobongisí akangáki masíni ya kosukola bilambá.**
   The repairman turned off the washing machine.

7. **Mobongisí akatísí lisálá na mbángu.**
   The repairman crossed the field on the run.

8. **Mbwa ekatísí lisálá na mbángu.**
   The dog crossed the field in a hurry.

9. **Mbwa elálaka na nsé ya ndáko.**
   The dog sleeps under the house.

10. **Mbwa elálaka na katí ya ndáko mibalé.**
    The dog sleeps between the houses.
1. Tiyá kitya nkêkêlé na balasaní. Put the wicker chairs on the porch.
2. Tiyá kitya mabáýa na kuku. Put the wooden chairs in the kitchen.
3. Masó akotôbola ndéle lininísa na kuku. The mason will cut a window in the kitchen some time later in the future.
4. Masó akotôbola ndéle lininísa na ndáko ya kolía. The mason will cut a window in the dining room one of these days.
5. Tandá matôko nyônsô na ndáko ya kolía. Spread all the mats in the dining room.
6. Tandá matôko nyônsô na mòi mpò makauka. Spread all the mats in the sun to dry.
7. Bòi atíki matôko nyônsô na mòi mpò makauka. The house boy left all the mats in the sun to dry.
8. Bòi atíki mêsâ ya nkêkêlé na libândâ. The boy left the wicker table outside.
9. Nání atíki mêsâ ya nkêkêlé na libândâ? Who left the wicker table outside?
10. Nání atíki mêsâ ya bibendé na libândâ? Who left the metal table outside?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Léló mòkoló ya kosukola bilambá. Today is wash day.
2. Léló mòkoló ya kobongísa ndáko. Today is housecleaning day.
5. Andelé sâkopasola nkônî.
6. Andelé azîlákî tâtâ âkêndé mósâlâ.
7. Andelé na Alobé bazîlákî tâtâ âkêndé na mósâlâ.
8. Andelé na Alobé bâkobîmîsâ kitî na mësa na libânda.

The domestics straightened up the house.
The domestics are splitting firewood.
André splitting firewood.
André was waiting for the boss to leave for work.
André and Albert are waiting for the boss to leave for work.
André and Albert are bringing the table and chairs outside.
The masons are bringing the table and chairs outside.
The masons are too hot.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mwâna òyo azâlî na mayîlé mokûsé.
2. Mwâna òyo sàkokômbo talatalà na etênî ya elambâ.
4. Kulûtu na ngâî azâlákâ na mòtuka ya mwindu.
5. Mokomba balabalâ azâlákâ na mòtuka ya mwindu.

This child is mentally retarded.
The child is wiping the mirror with a piece of cloth.
My sister is wiping the mirror with a piece of cloth.
My brother used to have a black automobile.
The streetcleaner used to have a black automobile.
    The road repairman was lucky today.

7. Leki na ye azali na makilal malamu l elo.
    Your brother was lucky today.

8. Leki na ye alongoli bolangiti na bilambanyonso ya mbetu.
    Your sister took off the blanket and all the bed clothes.

9. Nayebi te nanl alongoli bolangiti na bilambanyonso ya mbetu.
    I don't know who took off the blankets and all the bed clothes.

10. Nayebi te epai ya gare ya masini ezali.
    I don't know where the train station is.
Unit 23

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Bána bakei wapı? Where have the children gone?

-B-

2. Bakei na etéyolo kosakana na ndembó. They have gone to school to play soccer.

-A-

3. Sókó tolei mabé? Mpó nazalí kokonde epái. Suppose we eat, that'd be all right, wouldn't it? Because I'm going somewhere.

-B-

4. Wapı? Where?

-A-

Nzámbé God
Ndáko-Nzámbé church
-lóngana to marry, get married

(B) Christian rite)

5. Na língí nákendé na Ndáko-
Nzámbé kótála bolónganí ya moníngá na ngáí Michel. I want to go to the church to be present at the marriage of my friend Michel.

-B-

-bálana to marry, get married

(traditional)

6. Baákobálana lẹlọ? Are they getting married today?
7. Lelo kò! na mpokwa!  
Yes indeed, this afternoon.

-B-

8. Sókí bána bazalákí swá,  
   ndé tokei bísu míbalé.  
If the children were here, we  
   would go together.

9. Michel bangó na mwási na  
   yé balíngání míngí mpénda.  
Michel and his wife really love  
   each other.

-A-

10. Ezálí ya sóoló! Bolíngó  
   na bangó eútá bomwána.  
That's true. They have loved  
   each other since childhood.

-B-

11. Nsíma ya Ndáko-Nzámbe,  
   bokokéndé kobína wápi?  
After (having been at) the  
   church, where are you going  
   to dance?

-A-

12. Nakanísí na ndáko ya Michel.  
I believe at Michel's house.

-B-

13. Ózóngaka ntángu malámu!  
Come home at a reasonable hour.

USEFUL PHRASES

Maméló azali kosambela.  
The nun is praying.

Maméló azali kotanga búuku  
yá bísámba.  
The nun is reading (from) the  
prayerbook.

Maméló alátí sutání ya mpémbé.  
The nun is wearing a long  
white robe.

Mópe aákobálisa balóngani.  
The priest is marrying the  
couple.
Pastélé ákobálisa balóngani.

Lopété ya maliásí ezáli ya mbóngó.

Lopété ya bolóngani ezáli ya wólo.

Zúzi apésí bangó ndíngisa ya koboma libála.

Zúzi apésí bangó nzelá ya koboma libála.

Azálí mokristu ya mópò.

Azálí mokristu ya míisyóni.

Azálí mokristu ya ngelésa.

Azálí mpagáno.

Nganga nkísí ákobíkísa motu ya maláli.

Nganga nkísí ákobëngana badiábolo.

Nganga nkísí anókísí mbúla.

Tómbólá mosikitélë.

Kángáká mosikitélë.

Nabótámí na Zavíle.

Nabótámí na Fevlié.

Nabótámí na Málásí.

Nabótámí na Aprílì.

Nabótámí na Mál.

The minister is marrying the couple.

The wedding ring is made out of silver.

The wedding ring is made out of gold.

The judge gave them a divorce.

The judge gave them a divorce.

He is Catholic.

He is Protestant.

He belongs to the Salvation Army.

He is a pagan.

The medicine man heals people.

The medicine man chases away the evil spirits.

The medicine man made it rain.

Put up the mosquito netting.

Always keep the mosquito netting closed.

I was born in January.

I was born in February.

I was born in March.

I was born in April.

I was born in May.
Nabótámí na Yúnì.
I was born in June.

Nabótámí na Yúlí.
I was born in July.

Nabótámí na Augustù.
I was born in August.

Nabótámí na Setémbe.
I was born in September.

Nabótámí na Okotóbe.
I was born in October.

Nabótámí na Novémbe.
I was born in November.

Nabótámí na Desémbe.
I was born in December.

mamélo (ma mère)
nun
-sáamba
to plead
-sámbela
to plead for someone; pray; perform/conduct religious services

esámbo, bi-
prayer
sutání (soutane)
cloth (clergy); cassock
-bálisa
to marry, give in

pastélé (pasteur)
marriage, perform a

maliásì (marriage)
marriage ceremony

bolónganì, bolonganì, ma-

wólo

zúzì, zúze (juge)

libála, ma-

mokristu, monkristu, ba-

mísyôni (mission)

minister, clergyman (Protestant)
maintenance

marriage (Christian rite); married person

gold

judge; court, tribunal

marriage (traditional)

Christian

missionary, clergyman (Protestant)
UNIT 23  LINGALA

ngelésa Protestant, Salvation Army
mopagáno, ba- pagan
nganga, ba- a specialist, master of trade;
-benga native doctor; one who conducts religious services
diábolo, ba-
devil, evil spirit
mosikitélè, mi-
(moustiquaire)
mosquito netting

NOTES

23.1 Suggestive Cohortative

Sókó toleí mabé?

/sókó/ and the immediate past mark a suggestive cohortative, which usually translates, 'Suppose... ', e.g., /Sókó toleí mabé?/, 'Suppose we eat, that'd be all right, wouldn't it?'

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Mwána akeí wápi?
   Where has the child gone?

2. Mwána akeí kotéya na
   etéyelo.
   The boy has gone to teach at the school.

3. Molakísi aákotéya na
   etéyelo.
   The instructor is teaching the school.

4. Molakísi aákolóngana léló
   na Ndákó-Nzámbe.
   The instructor is getting married at the church today.

236


7. Tatá akozonga na ntángu malamu.

8. Tatá akoendé kobína na ndáko ya Michel.

9. Balóngana bakokoendé kobína na ndáko ya Michel.


My friends are getting married at the church today.

My friends won't get back too late.

My father will get back fairly early.

My father is going to dance at Michel's.

The married couple(s) will dance at Michel's house.

The husband and wife went to their village.

**GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2**

1. Nasóbéli ndáko lifungóla ya sika. I bought a new key for the house.

2. Nasóbéli babíni masanga. I bought the dancers some drinks.

3. Tozalí kopésa babíni masanga. We are giving the dancers some drinks.

4. Tozalí kopésa balóngana bosálisí. We are giving the couple assistance.

5. Tozalí kosénga lifúta na basómbe. We are asking the purchasers for payment.

6. Toutí kosénga lifúta na basómbe. We have just asked the purchasers for payment.

7. Toutí kopésa ye liyébisa. We have come to give him a notice.
8. Motóngi ya ndáko azali 
   kopésa yé llyébisa.
   The contractor is going to give 
   him the notice.

9. Motóngi ya ndáko azali na 
   ebúteli ya mabáya.
   The builder has a wooden ladder.

10. Mobomí azalákí na ebúteli 
    ya mabáya.
    The assassin had a wooden ladder.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Akozala kotómbara mosikitélé 
   likoló libosó ya kolála.
   He'll put up the mosquito net-
   ting before going to sleep.

2. Tokangáká mosikitélé likoló 
   libosó ya kolála.
   We closed the mosquito netting 
   before going to bed.

3. Tokangáká mbókó ntángu 
   azwáká likámá.
   We crossed our arms when he had 
   an accident. (i.e., we did not 
   give him any assistance.)

4. Bangó míbalé bamilésánáká 
   mbókó ntángu azwáká 
   likámá.
   He aided the person ('they 
   mutually gave hands') who 
   had an accident.

5. Bangó míbalé bamilésánáká 
   móbókó libosó bákabwáná.
   They promised to write to each 
   other after they separated.

6. Tatá apésáká ngái móbókó 
   libosó tokabwáná.
   My father gave me some advice 
   before we separated.

7. Tatá apésáká ngái mwási 
   ya kobála.
   My father obtained a wife for 
   me.

8. Atá ndéle nakozwa mwási 
   ya mobála.
   I will get married sooner or 
   later.

9. Atá ndéle nakozwa bokonzí 
   na mbóka na bisú.
   Sooner or later I'll have the 
   power in our country.

10. Ndé yó mokonzí na mbóka 
    na bisú?
    Are you the chief of state of 
    our country?
GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Nakomí chec. I wrote a check.
2. Natóndísí chec. I filled out a check.
4. Natíndí ye na bánk1. I sent him to the bank.
5. Natíndí chec na bánk1. I sent the check to the bank.
6. Nazalí na mbéngó na bánk1. I have money in the bank.
7. Nazví mbéngó na bánk1. I withdrew money from the bank.
8. Naséngí mbéngó na bánk1. I withdrew money from the bank.
9. Nakeí kozwá mbéngó na bánk1. I'm going to the bank to get some money.
10. Nakeí kodéfa mbéngó na bánk1. I'm going to the bank to borrow some money.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Efelo ya ndáko ebúkáni. The wall of the house collapsed.
2. Efelo ya ndáko ezali motánésó. The wall of the house is yellow.
3. Elambá na ye ya maliásí ezali motánésó. Her wedding gown is light yellow.
4. Elambá na ye ya bolónganí ezali motánésó. Her wedding gown is light yellow.
5. Elambá na ye ya bolónganí sútí na Mputú. Her wedding gown came from Europe.
7. Lopéte na yé ya bolóngani ezalí ya wólo. Her wedding ring is gold.
8. Ntángu na yé ya mabókó ezalí ya wólo. His wristwatch is gold.
9. Ntángu na yé ya mabókci ekufí. His wristwatch is broken.
10. Ntángu na yé ya ndáko ekufí. His alarm clock is broken.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mokanda ezalakí likoló ya búuku óyo ezalakí likoló ya mésa. The letter was on the book on the table.
3. Nátiyí yango epáí otíkákí. I put it where you left it.
4. Nazwákí ekomeli epáí otíkákí. I found the pen where you left it.
5. Nazwákí ekomeli likoló ya mésa na eténi ya kolía. I found the pencil on the table in the dining room.
6. Tiyélá ngái mpondú na lóso likoló ya mésa na eténi ya kolía. Put me some rice with manioc leaves on the table in the dining room.
7. Tiyélá ngái mpondú na lóso balambí na pílipílí na mafúta motáné. Put me out some rice with manioc leaves cooked with peppers and palm oil.
8. Péssé ngáì bilóko balámőò
    na pilipíìlì na mafúta
    motané.

9. Péssé ngáì bilóko otkákí
    lóbi na mpókwa.

10. Lakisá ye ekóti otkákí
    lóbi na mpókwa.

     Give me something cooked with
     peppers and palm oil.

     Give me some of the food that
     you had left yesterday
     afternoon.

     Show her the hat that you
     left yesterday afternoon.

23.2. Distant Indefinite Future

     Atá ndélé nakoza mwaáùi ya kobála.

     /atá ndélé/, 'even sometime', is used to refer to something
     that is hoped or wished for but which is way off in the future if
     at all, as in the example above, 'I'll get married one of these
     days.
Unit 24

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Bozalí na bileko bóní na mbúla mókó? How many seasons do you have per year?

-B-

2. Míbalé, mókó ya mbúla, mosusu ya elanga. Two, one rainy and the other dry.

-A-

3. Eleko ya elanga ezalí ntángu níní? When is the dry season?

-B-

4. Ebanda ka na sánzá ya mókó, tií na sánzá ya motóbá. It lasts from January to June.

-A-

5. Óyo ya mbúla? And the rainy season?

-B-

6. Elanga ya mbúla ekámáti sánzá ya motóbá, tií na òyo ya zómi na míbalé. The rainy season lasts the other six months from June until December.

-A-

7. Lobélá ngaí mwáa makambo elekaka ntángu wáná. Tell me something about time.
During the rainy season there are a lot of natural calamities because it rains a lot and very hard.

Don't you have a lot of thunder?

We have a lot of thunder, and it's quite loud.

During the rain people don't work or go outside?

Why not? People usually go out, only there are some old houses and small roads that are cut off or submerged under water.

How can you know if it's going to rain?
14. Ezalí mpási té, okomóna likoló ekómi moíndu, mpé mbóka molíli, na ntángu wáná, batu ná nyama bakómi kolúka ndáko na bangó.

It's not difficult. You will see the sky become black and the village gets dark, men and animals start looking for shelter.

USEFUL PHRASES

Eleko ya mpela ezali malamu na kolóbo.

Eleko ya mpela ekokólisa bilóna mbángumbángu.

Eleko ya mpela ekoúmelaka sánzá ménei too méitánu.

Mabelé ya zélo ebóngí na mbuma té.

Mabelé ya zélo ebóngí na ndúnda té.

Mabelé ya zélo ebóngí na bilóna té.

Mpáu, mpó na kobóngola mabelé.

The rainy season is good for fishing.

The rainy season makes plants grow very fast.

The rainy season lasts four or five months.

Sandy soil isn't suitable for fruits.

Sandy soil isn't suitable for vegetables.

Sandy soil isn't suitable for plants.

A spade is for turning over earth.

A machete is for cutting small trees.

A hoe is for cutting weeds and digging wells.

He raises corn.

He raises coconuts.
Akónaka mángolo.
He raises mangoes.

Atímólí tomáto.
He hoed the tomatoes.

Atímólí ngúba.
He hoed the peanuts.

Atímólí libélá na nkóngo.
He dug a trench with a hoe.

Akéngélaka bibwélé.
He raises animals.

Abokolaka nyama.
He raises animals.

Abokolaka ngómbé.
He keeps cows.

Abokolaka ntabá.
He keeps goats.

Abokolaka mèmø.
He keeps sheep.

Abokolaka mpatá.
He keeps sheep.

Mbóka ezíndí na mál.
The village is flooded.

Mwána azíndí na mál.
The child drowned.

Masúwa mazíndí na mál.
The boat sank.

lisángú, lisángo, ma-
a grain of corn
kokotí
coconut, coconut palm
língolo, ma-
mango, mango tree
ngúba, n-
peanuts
libélá, ma-
pit, hole, trench, well, valley
ewélá, br-
small domestic animal, sheep, goat
ngómbé, n-
cow, bull
ntaba, n-
goat
mpatá, m-
sheep
mpela, m-
rain, rainy season, flood
-lóbo
to fish
-lóna
to plant, sow
bilóna  plant, planting
zélo  sand
ndúnda, n-  vegetables
líkwangola, ma-  machete, chopping-knife; part of a village where ex-soldiers live
nkóngó, n-  hoe, pick-ox
-kóna  to plant, sow

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Bozálí na bîleko bóní na mbúla móko? How many seasons do you have in a year?
2. Tozálí na bîleko mîbalé na mbúla móko. We have two seasons in year.
3. Tozálí na básángá zómí na mîbalé na mbúla móko. We have twelve months in a year.
4. Tozálí na básánzâ zómí na mîbalé mpó na eleko ya mbúla na eleko ya elanga. We have twelve months during the dry season and wet season.
5. Lobélá ngái mwâa makambo mpó na eleko ya mbúla na eleko ya elanga. Tell me something about the wet and dry seasons.
6. Lobélá ngái mwâa makambo elekaka na ntângu wâná. Tell me something about that time.
7. Na ntângu wâná makâma mapusí míngi. During that time, there are a lot of natural calamities.
8. Makâma mapusí míngi mpàmba te mbúla ekônko míngi mpe makâsi. There are a lot of natural calamities because it rains long and hard.
9. Tozalí na nkáké míngi, mpámba te mbúla ekonóko míngi mpé makásí.

We have a lot of thunder and lightning when it rains hard for a long time.

10. Tozalí na nkáké míngi na mbóka na bíšú.

We have a lot of thunder and lightning in our country.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ntángu ya mbúla batu basalaka toó babimaka libándá té?

During the rain, people don't work or go outside?

2. Mpó na níni té, batu basalaka mpé babimaka libándá?

Why don't people work or go outside?

3. Mpó na níni té, tozalí na nkáké míngi mpé makásí.

Why not, we have a lot of very loud thunder.

4. Tozalí na nkáké míngi mpé makasí, kásí ntángu ya elanga té.

We have a lot of very loud thunder, but not in the dry season.

5. Bilóko ya kolía bizalí mingi ntángu ya mbúla, kásí ntángu ya elanga té.

There are lots of things to eat in the rainy season, but not in the dry season.


There are many things to eat in the rainy season because there is a lot of water in the ground.

7. Mpó máí ezalí míngi na mabelé bambuma bilokóla malámu.

Because there is lots of water in the ground, fruits grow very well.
UNIT 24 LINGALA

8. Bambuma bikokóla malámu
   sókó mabelé ezali malámu.
   Fruits grow well if the soil
   is good.

9. Sókó mabelé ezali malámu
   bilóna bikokóla mbángu.
   If the soil is good, plants
   grow rapidly.

10. Bilóna bikokóla mbángu
    na ntángu ya mbúla.
    Plants grow rapidly in the
    rainy season.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Lóbi mokolo níni?
   What day is tomorrow?

2. Lóbi mokolo ya mosálá
   mitańu.
   Tomorrow is Friday.

3. Nakosala té mokolo ya
   mosálá mitańu.
   I won't work Friday.

4. Nakosala té na ntúngó mpé
   na mpókwa.
   I won't work either the morning
   or the afternoon.

5. Akendéki na Stade Baudouin
   té na ntúngó mpé na
   mpókwa.
   He didn't go to the Stade Baudoin
   either in the morning or in
   the afternoon.

6. Akendéki na Stade Baudouin
   té lóbi na ntúngó.
   He didn't go to the Stade
   Baudoin yesterday morning.

7. Okoyaa lóbi na ntúngó.
   You will come tomorrow morning.

8. Okoyaa lóbi na masanga.
   You will come tomorrow with the
   drinks.

9. Lobélá ye áyáa na masanga
    lóbi.
    Tell him to bring some drinks
    tomorrow.

10. Lobélá ye áyáa na bána
    léló.
    Tell him to bring the children
    today.
1. Nakel kosala na Kinsasa.
   I'm about to go to work in Leopoldville.

2. Nakel kotanga buuku na ndako.
   I'm about ready to read a book at home.

3. Nakosala bilanga na nsima na ndako.
   I'll cultivate the fields behind the house.

   I'll work the fields after the dry season.

5. Baloni bakokeba na ntangu ya elanga.
   The cultivators are attentive during the dry season.

   The cultivators pay attention when they are spading up the ground.

7. Bakotimola mabelo na nkongo na mpau.
   They turn up the earth with hoes and spades.

8. Aakobongola mabelo na nkongo na mpau.
   They are turning over the ground with hoes and shovels.

   They dig up the ground in the last month of the dry season.

10. Ebongi malamu olona na sanza ya nsuka ya elanga.
    It's best to cultivate in the last month of the dry season.

---

1. Mabelo ya mai eekokolisa bilona mbangumbangu.
   Wet earth makes plants grow very fast.

2. Eleko ya mbula eekokolisa bilona mbangumbangu.
   The rainy season makes plants grow very fast.
3. Eleko ya mbúla ekoúmelaka sánzá máne1 too mítanu.

4. Eleko ya mpela ekoúmelaka sánzá máne1 too mítanu.

5. Eleko ya mpela ezáli malámu na kolóbo.


7. Bwátu esálamaka na mabáya makási.

8. Ndáko ya bííí esálamaka na mabáya makási.


10. Ndáko na bííí etóngámaká libosó ya etumba.

The rainy season lasts four or five months.

The rainy season lasts four or five months.

The rainy season is good for fishing.

A dugout canoe is good for fishing.

A dugout is (always) made of durable wood.

Our house is built with strong timbers.

Our house consists of four rooms.

Our house was built before the war.

The children pay no attention to my words.

The children left the ball on the playground.

This afternoon there will be a soccer game at the field.

This afternoon we will go somewhere.

The couple will go somewhere.

The couple wore new clothes.
7. Lóbi bamónákí bangó balátákí bilambá ya síka.
   Yesterday they appeared wearing new clothes.

8. Lóbi bamónákí bangó ntángu bautákí na Ndáko-Nzámbe.
   Yesterday they were seen leaving the church.

   We said hello to the woman and man as they were leaving the church.

10. Totindélákí mwásí na mobáli mbóté nsíma ya bolóngani na bangó.
    We said hello to the woman and man after their marriage.
**LINGALA**

**GLOSSARY**

This vocabulary is alphabetized according to the stem consonant and not according to the prefixes, e.g., /mwána/, 'child', is alphabetized under 'a'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>mwáa</td>
<td>small, little, few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>á1</td>
<td>oh, hey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aló (allô)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'ambassade'</td>
<td>embassy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mwambe, mwambî</td>
<td>eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mwána, ëbàna</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bomwâna, (ma-)</td>
<td>childhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Anglais'</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Angelé (anglais)</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aré (arrêt)</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aré ya otobisî</td>
<td>bus stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mwâsî, ëbâsi</td>
<td>woman, female, left (opp. right)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>atá, atâa</td>
<td>even, even if, although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>atá ndele</td>
<td>much later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bwâtu, ëmâtu</td>
<td>dugout canoe, native boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>avâsî (avance)</td>
<td>advance, part payment, deposit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aviô (avion)</td>
<td>airplane, airmail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>-bakîsa</td>
<td>to add</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-bâla</td>
<td>to marry (traditional marriage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libálá, ma-</td>
<td>marriage (traditional native)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbala, m-</td>
<td>time, times, often mostly potato</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbálá, m-</td>
<td>street, (broad) road</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balabálá, °balabálá</td>
<td>to marry, get married, marry each other (traditional marriage)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-balana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balasání, °balasání</td>
<td>veranda, porch; hat brim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ebale, bi-</td>
<td>stream, river</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mibalé</td>
<td>two</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobálí, mi-</td>
<td>man, male; right (opp. left)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-balisa</td>
<td>to marry, give in marriage, perform a marriage ceremony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-banda</td>
<td>to start, commence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bandá</td>
<td>from, since, beginning, starting, continuing/starting from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bandaka</td>
<td>to begin regularly, to last, continue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libándá</td>
<td>outside; yard, field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbanda, ba-</td>
<td>co-wife; brother-in-law</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>married to wife's sister;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sister-in-law married to husband's brother</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>people who don't like each other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ebandeli, bi-</td>
<td>beginning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bobandi, (ma-)</td>
<td>beginning, start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libángá, ma-</td>
<td>rock, stone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobangé, mi-</td>
<td>elder, old man/woman, age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
mbángu, mbángo, m-
speed, swiftness
bánkí (banque)
bank
libáýá, ma-
wood, board, bench, seat; aim, target; blouse
mabé
bad, wicked, ugly
mbé
then, otherwise, else; perhaps; introduces main clause of conditional sentence
-beka
to borrow, buy on credit, ask for the loan of
-békisa
to lend, give as a loan, pay in advance, sell on credit
mobéko, m1-
law, regulation, obligation, duty
libélá, ma-
pit, hole, trench; well; valley
-bélé
to hurt, suffer, be sick
mabelé
ground, earth, floor
mbélé
then; perhaps; else, otherwise introducing main clause of hypothetical supposition
mbélí, m-
knife
-bémba
to travel
mobémbó, m1-
trip, journey
-bénda
to draw/pull/move in, out, up, off, over
ebendé, b1-
piece of metal, iron, coin, metal part
libendé, ma-
rod, post, pole; tamper, tamping stick
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-bendisa</td>
<td>to help pull/move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-benga</td>
<td>to follow, hunt, chase, pursue; approach, go to; to be on the point of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-benga</td>
<td>to call, summon; call, name, order (merchandise)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bengana</td>
<td>to drive away, pursue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'besoin'</td>
<td>need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bêta, -bêta</td>
<td>to hit, strike, knock, beat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ebêtelî, bi-</td>
<td>hammer, tool for hitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbétu, mbéto, m-</td>
<td>bed, pallet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bîka</td>
<td>to recover, lived, be rescued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbîla, m-</td>
<td>palm nut, palm tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bîma</td>
<td>to go out, come out, go for a walk, emerge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bîmaka</td>
<td>to go/come out regularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobîmba, (mi-)</td>
<td>entire, whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bîmîsa</td>
<td>to have (something) come/go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bîmîsela</td>
<td>to have (something come/go out for someone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bîna</td>
<td>to dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bobîna, ma-</td>
<td>a dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobînî, mi-</td>
<td>dancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbîsî, m-</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bôî, (ba-)</td>
<td>houseboy, servant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
mbóka, m-

village, region, district; tribe, race; residence, address

libóké, ma-
bunch, group, crowd; pack, package, swarm

lobókq, ma-
arm, sleeve, side, hand

mobókolí, ba-
raiser, one who cares for/raises children/animals

-bókololó

to bring up, raise, rear, feed, breed (animals)

bolangí1, bolangí1
blanket

-bolosé (brosser)
to brush

bolós1 (brosse)
brush

-boma
to kill, murder, slaughter; hunt catch; damage badly, destroy, extinguish, efface, erase, wipe (off); abolish, eliminate, do away with

-bomba
to hide, keep, store, preserve, shelter; observe, obey (law, custom)

ebómbeli, bi-
place/rack/cabinet for storage; dresser, bookcase, china-cabinet

mobomí, mi-
killer, murderer, assassin, butcher

-bôngísa
to put in order, prepare, repair, arrange, dress up

-bôngí sama
to be repaired (by someone)

-bôngí sela
to repair or prepare for someone

256
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mobongisi, ba-</td>
<td>repairer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobongisi ya motuka</td>
<td>mechanic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bongo, -bonga</td>
<td>to be suitable, be in order, fit, be fitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libongó, ma-</td>
<td>shore, quay, wharf, dock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbongó, m-</td>
<td>money; silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bongola</td>
<td>to change, turn around; stir; interpret, translate; displace, remove, shift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bosana</td>
<td>to forget, be mistaken, make a mistake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libosó, ma-</td>
<td>front; before, in front of; first, last, fartherest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bota</td>
<td>to give birth to, bear, produce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libota, libotá, ma-</td>
<td>family, household, descent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbotama, m-</td>
<td>birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mboté</td>
<td>greetings, good morning/after noon/evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moboti, ba-</td>
<td>parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bobotisi, (ma-)</td>
<td>obstetrics, midwifery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobotisi, ba-</td>
<td>midwife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-botolo</td>
<td>to take/snatch away, confiscate, impound; pillage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'bourgimestre'</td>
<td>mayor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'bourse d'études'</td>
<td>scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bóya</td>
<td>to refuse, reject, not want, despise; abandon, leave for good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-búka</td>
<td>to break, demolish, pick, gather; conquer, change direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-búkana</td>
<td>to be broken; gather, assemble, be equally strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbúla, m-</td>
<td>rain, rainy season, year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bulé (bleu)</td>
<td>blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libúlu, ma-</td>
<td>well, pit, toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbuma, m-</td>
<td>fruit; sore, boil; grain, seed; change, coins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llibumu, ma-</td>
<td>stomach, belly, womb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-buna, -bunda</td>
<td>to fight, wage war; wrestle, struggle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-búnga</td>
<td>to forget, make a mistake, be wrong; lose; get lost; lose one's way; die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-búngisela</td>
<td>to lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'bureau'</td>
<td>office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bús</td>
<td>bus (see otobísí)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-buta</td>
<td>to rise, ascend, climb (up), creep (up), go up, increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ebútelí, b1-</td>
<td>ladder, stairs; top, summit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bútisela</td>
<td>to send something (back) to someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butó (bouton)</td>
<td>button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butú, butú</td>
<td>night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>búuku, (ba-)</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbwá, m-</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

258
| LINGALA |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| -bwáka         | to throw, reject, renounce;     |
|                 | throw out, disown               |
| ebwélé, bi-    | small domestic animal, sheep,   |
|                 | goat                            |
| 'chec'         | check                           |
| 'chutes'       | rapids                          |
| 'cravate'      | necktie                         |
| ndáko, n-      | house, building, room, shed,    |
|                 | wall                            |
| Ndáko-Nzámbe   | church                          |
| ndámbo, n-     | part, piece, share, half        |
| ndé            | then, introduces main clauses   |
|                 | in conditional sentence         |
| ndé            | only, however, although, inspite|
|                 | of the fact that; a future      |
|                 | marker in literary Lingala      |
|                 | (Do not use as a future marker) |
| -défa           | to borrow, buy on credit, ask   |
|                 | for the loan of                 |
| -défisa         | to lend, give as a loan, pay    |
|                 | in advance, sell on credit      |
| ndéle, n-      | sometime, in the future         |
| atá ndéle      | much later                      |
| mondélé, mi-   | white man, European             |
| ndembó, n-     | rubber, ball                    |

259
lingala

ndéngé, n-

ndéngé na ndéngé

ndéngé níni

madésu

díl

midí

día bólo, ba-

ndínga, n-

ndínglsa, n-, (See--linglsa)

ndôbô, n-

bondôki, ma-

ndúnda, n

dzeké

sort, kind, manner, way, quality

all kinds of

how

beans

comrade, friend

noon (11-1)

devil, evil spirit

language

consent, permission, authority,

authorization

fishing, fish hook

gun, rifle

vegetables

steamshovel; front-end loader;

earth mover; dump truck

eyes; oh

election

gasoline

franc

to sit, be seated, live, reside

seat, chair

to cause to sit, have sit

260
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Lingala</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wall</td>
<td>efelo, bi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fever</td>
<td>féfélé, févélé (fièvre)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form, blank</td>
<td>físi (fiche)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photograph, picture</td>
<td>fotó (photo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>Français (also Falansé)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refrigerator, cold storage room</td>
<td>frigo (frigo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to shut, close; take grasp; button</td>
<td>-fúnga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to open, release, unlock, unbutton</td>
<td>-fúngola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>lifúngóla, ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>button</td>
<td>lifúngú, ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be opened</td>
<td>-fungwamaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to pay; a tone, make up for</td>
<td>-fúta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay, payment, salary</td>
<td>lifúta, ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil, fat, grease</td>
<td>mafúta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>payer, tenant, renter</td>
<td>mofúteli, ba-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(See -fúnda)</td>
<td>-fwánda (See -fándisa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sour(ness)</td>
<td>ngai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, me, my, mine</td>
<td>ngái</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Lingala language</td>
<td>ngái (emphatic subject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>physician, European doctor</td>
<td>mónganga, mi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station</td>
<td>'gare'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'gaz'</td>
<td>gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magazìni (magasin)</td>
<td>store, shop; depot, storage place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbagba, ṣgbagba</td>
<td>bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'gendarme'</td>
<td>policeman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ngengё</td>
<td>to shine, blaze, gleam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ngenisa</td>
<td>to cause to shine, blaze, gleam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mingı</td>
<td>much, many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bangó</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boongó</td>
<td>thus, so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yangó</td>
<td>they (impersonal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngóla, n-</td>
<td>ngola tree; reddish powder make from its bark; red, purple, violet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>língolo, ma-</td>
<td>mango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngómbá, n-</td>
<td>mountain, hill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngómbé, n-</td>
<td>cow, bull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ngomela</td>
<td>to iron for someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ngomelisela</td>
<td>to have something ironed for someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngonga, n-</td>
<td>time, hour, bell, gong; clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'goudron'</td>
<td>tar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'gouvernement'</td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngúba, n-</td>
<td>peanut(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gumba</td>
<td>to fold, bend; stoop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gumbama</td>
<td>to be bent/folded/stooped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mongung1, monkung1, n-</td>
<td>mosquito</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### BASIC COURSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nguyā</td>
<td>strength, power, ability, quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>móngwa, m-</td>
<td>salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>má̄i</td>
<td>water; sap, juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>má̄i-má̄i</td>
<td>liquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mó̄i</td>
<td>sun, sunlight, daylight, day, the heat of the sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ífo (il faut)</td>
<td>it is necessary, to have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nainu</td>
<td>still, yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaba</td>
<td>to give, state, divide, share; betray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kabinda, ba-</td>
<td>carpenter, cabinetmaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kabiné (cabinet)</td>
<td>toilet; excrement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kabola</td>
<td>to hand out, distribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kalwana</td>
<td>to be separated/divided/distributed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nkái, n-</td>
<td>paddle, oar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>káka</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nkáke, n-</td>
<td>thunder, lightning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kala</td>
<td>formerly, earlier, old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalesó (calecón)</td>
<td>shorts, underwear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kalinga, -kálanga</td>
<td>to roast, bake, fry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

263
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Likamá, ma-</th>
<th>danger, accident, natural calamity; punishment, retribution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nkamá, monkamá</td>
<td>hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kamata</td>
<td>to take, receive, accept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Likambo, ma-</td>
<td>difference, matter, case, dispute, affair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamió (camion)</td>
<td>truck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kana</td>
<td>then, otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kána</td>
<td>to resolve, intend, threaten, promise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mokanda, mi-</td>
<td>letter, paper, document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kanga</td>
<td>to wrap up, package; stop, cease, close, shut; take, grasp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kangama</td>
<td>to be stopped, tied, captured, congealed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ekangeli, bi-</td>
<td>handle; band; divide for turning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kangema</td>
<td>to be closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bokangl, (ma-)</td>
<td>a stop, stopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kangwama</td>
<td>to be opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kangisa</td>
<td>to stop, cause to stop; join fasten, screw tight; detain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kangola</td>
<td>to release, let go of, loose, open unroll, unlock, unfasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kangolela</td>
<td>to open for someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kangwa</td>
<td>to be open, be unlocked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kanisa</td>
<td>to think, reflect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likanisi, ma-</td>
<td>thought, opinion, intention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k'anya, nk'anya, (n-)</td>
<td>fork, pitch fork, rake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kasi</td>
<td>but, on the contrary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makasi</td>
<td>very, much, strong, hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kata</td>
<td>to cut, chop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nikata</td>
<td>to cut oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-katana</td>
<td>to cut each other; get cut; stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kat1</td>
<td>in, inside (of), in the middle of, among; center, middle, inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>katikat1</td>
<td>in between, in the middle/center of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-katisa</td>
<td>cause/have cut; cross; interrupt, change direction, go through bend, curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kauka, -kaoka</td>
<td>to be(come) dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kaukiisa</td>
<td>to dry, cause to dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kawa</td>
<td>coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likaya, ma-</td>
<td>tobacco, cigarette, cigar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kazaka</td>
<td>coat, jacket, vest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moké, m1-</td>
<td>small, thin; smallness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-keba</td>
<td>to pay attention, be attentive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likei, ma-</td>
<td>egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bokei, (ma-)</td>
<td>departure, starting, separation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nk'ekelé, n-</td>
<td>cane, reed, liana, wickerwork</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

265
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lingala</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ekeko, bi-</td>
<td>picture, sculpture, statue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kelăsi</td>
<td>class, classroom, school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lokele, n-</td>
<td>spoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makélélél</td>
<td>quarrel, argument, sound of voices, noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-këngë</td>
<td>to go, go away; die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-këngë</td>
<td>to take glances at, watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-këngelë</td>
<td>to watch, guard, keep, raise animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mokëngelë, ba-</td>
<td>guard, keeper, protector,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sentinel, overseer, warehouse-keeper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makîlā</td>
<td>blood; fate, destiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bokîla, ma-</td>
<td>hunt(ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mokîlî, mi-</td>
<td>mainland, land; interior, inland; world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kîliyó, kîlió (crayon)</td>
<td>pencil; legal charges, costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bokîlô, òbakîlô</td>
<td>parent-in-law; brother/sister-in-law, good friend, acquaintances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nákînga, n-</td>
<td>bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kînînî (quinine)</td>
<td>quinine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nkîsî, n-</td>
<td>medicine, charm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kîta</td>
<td>to go/come down, descend; decrease, diminish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kîtî</td>
<td>chair</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

266
| **-kitisa** | to cause to come down/descend; bring down, put down; take a person somewhere, drop off a person |
| **kitóko** | beauty, beautiful, pretty, fine; delicious, clean, neat |
| **Kitúba, Kutúba** | the Kituba language |
| **kó** | indeed, certainly; come on |
| **móko** | one; certain, some |
| **mokóbo, mi-** | color, paint |
| **-koka** | to be able, can; be all present; be sufficient, enough |
| **kóko, ba-** | grandparent, grandchild |
| **-kóla** | to grow (up), increase |
| **lokóla, n-** | kind, sort, like, similar, such as |
| **-kólisa** | to cause to grow, bring up, raise, rear |
| **ekólo, bi-** | tribe (race), people of same place or language |
| **nkóo, nkó, n-** | intent, malice, purpose, will |
| **kokotí** | coconut, coconut palm |
| **likoló, ma-** | sky, heaven, up, top, surface, above, over, on |
| **lokolo, ma-** | leg, foot paw; wheel, rim, tire |
| **mokoló, mi-** | day |
| **mokóló, ba-** | grown person, adult |
| **kólongónu** | health |
LINGALA

monkolóto, mi-
-koma
-kóma
-komama
-kómbama
-kómbô, -kômba

nkómbó, n-
-komela
ekomelî, bi-

bokómi, (ma-)
mokomî, ba-
-kómîsa

komissélî (commissaire)
-kôna
nkôndokô, n-
nkôngo, n-
môkôngô, mi-
-konza

mokonzi
kópo
-kóta, kótô

ekötî, bi-

name; honor, reputation
write to/for someone
writing instrument, writing,
material, pencil, pen
pencil, pen, writing material
arrival
writer, author, scribe
to start, begin; cause to start/
begìn
commissioner, policeman
to plant, sow
cat
hoe, pickax
back
to manage, rule
chief, king, boss, supervisor
glass, tumbler, cup
to enter, go in
hat (man's)
-kótsa to cause to enter, insert, put in

nkóto thousand

kovokasíó (convocation) notice, summons, traffic ticket

mokristu, monkristu, ba-Christian

-kúfa to die; wear out; be broken

kúku kitchen; cook

-kulútu, ba- older brother/sister

kúná over there, yonder

-kunda to bury; plant

monkungu; mongungu, n-mosquito

mokísé, mi- short, small

-kúta to meet, find, come upon

-kútana to meet/find lack other

-kwá, -kweya to fall, fall down; take, get, obtain, cost

líkwangola, ma- machete, chopping-knife; part

of a village where ex-soldiers live

-kwéisa to drop, throw down, cut/pull
down, cause to fall, demolish,
give judgment againsts in a
lawsuit

-kweya to fall, be involved in/lose
a lawsuit

269
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lingala</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bolálu, (ma-)</td>
<td>length, depth, height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molálu, ma-</td>
<td>long, large, tall, deep, high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-laka</td>
<td>to give advice, set a time, promise; order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lakisa</td>
<td>to show, display, teach, instruct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molakisá, ba-</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lála</td>
<td>to sleep, lie down, stay, remain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lilála, ma-</td>
<td>orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malála1, maládi (maladi)</td>
<td>sickness, illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-láliisa</td>
<td>to put to bed, put to sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lámbe</td>
<td>to cook, prepare food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elambiá, bi-</td>
<td>cloth, material, piece of clothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lambilala</td>
<td>to cook or prepare food for someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molámbi1, ba-</td>
<td>cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malámu</td>
<td>good, well, fine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-landa</td>
<td>to follow, pursue; prosecute, sue; look for; woo, court</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elanga</td>
<td>field, garden; dry season; year, cultivating season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lángi1, n-</td>
<td>color, paint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-láta</td>
<td>to dress, put on clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-látísa</td>
<td>to dress, cause to put on clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bílé1</td>
<td>food(s), meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bolé1, (ma-)</td>
<td>meal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-léisa to feed, cause/give to eat
-leka to go by, pass by, surpass, excel
-lekaka to go/pass by regularly; to happen, continue to happen
lék1, bala younger brother/sister
-lekisa to have pass by, pass on; neglect; omit, miss
eleko, bl- season, time, period
léló today
-lémbé to be(come) tired, weary; tender, done; (re)lax(ed), soft, moderate, abate
-léngélé to prepare, get ready
eléng1 pleasing to the senses; good taste/smell, beauty
letá (l'état) government, state
Kikongo ya Letá Kituba
-lía to eat
libwá nine
mílikì milk
malíli cold; shade, cool place
molíli dark, obscure, darkness; ignorance
-límbisa to forgive, pardon, excuse
bolímbisì, (ma-) forgiveness, pardon
-linga to want, like; be almost on the point of; love, be fond of
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINGALA</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-lingana</td>
<td>to love/like each other; intertwine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lingisa</td>
<td>to authorize, grant permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bolingo, ma-</td>
<td>love, will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lisu, liso, o'misu, o'miso</td>
<td>eye (in pl.) with eyes open; with good vision/taste; unafraid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-loba</td>
<td>to speak, tell, say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lobaloba</td>
<td>to talk a lot, discuss, argue, complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lobaloba</td>
<td>to chat, engage in small talk, complain, talk nonsense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lobela</td>
<td>to speak to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molobeli, ba-</td>
<td>speaker, intercessor, lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molobi, ba-</td>
<td>speaker, lecturer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lobo</td>
<td>to fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eloko, bi-</td>
<td>thing, object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boloko, ma-</td>
<td>jail, prison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lokoto</td>
<td>to pick up, gather, collect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bololo</td>
<td>bitter(ness), sour(ness)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lona</td>
<td>to plant, sow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bilona</td>
<td>plant, planting, that which has been planted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-longana</td>
<td>to marry, get married (Christian rite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balongani</td>
<td>married couple(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bolongani, bolongani, ma-</td>
<td>marriage (Christian rite); married person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Words</td>
<td>Meanings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-longola, -longwa</td>
<td>to take away, remove, undress; wake up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bolongoli, (ma-)</td>
<td>removal, subtraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lopitalo, ba-(hopital)</td>
<td>hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loso</td>
<td>rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-luka</td>
<td>to hunt, search</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-luka</td>
<td>to row/paddle a boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lukela</td>
<td>to hunt for (something) for someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molunge, mi-</td>
<td>warmth, heat; fever, sweat; stifling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lùtu</td>
<td>spoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>of, belonging to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>má</td>
<td>Here! Take it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maliás1 (marriage)</td>
<td>marriage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamá, ba-</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lománde (amends)</td>
<td>fine, penalty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mata</td>
<td>to go up, climb, rise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'mécancien'</td>
<td>mechanic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-meka</td>
<td>to measure, weigh, try (out), test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bomeki1, (ma-)</td>
<td>attempt, effort, try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mele</td>
<td>to drink, suck, smoke; take medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melesi (merc1)</td>
<td>thanks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mélisa</td>
<td>to cause/give to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala Term</td>
<td>English Term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mameló, ba-</td>
<td>nun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mêmê</td>
<td>to carry, transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mêmelô</td>
<td>to carry for someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>momento, ba-</td>
<td>porter, carrier, bearer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mésa</td>
<td>table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méyá, loméyá</td>
<td>fifty-centime piece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lomîngó</td>
<td>Sunday, week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mônana</td>
<td>to be seen, appear; see each other; get seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mônê, -môna</td>
<td>to see, feel, observe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Monsieur'</td>
<td>Mister, Sir, Gentleman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mwînda</td>
<td>light, lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mwîndu, moîndu, moîndo, ba-</td>
<td>black, dark; a Negro, an African</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na</td>
<td>in, of, by, with, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná</td>
<td>and, also, even, besides, in addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mínel</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monênê, ml-</td>
<td>big, thick, wide, fat, tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonî</td>
<td>how much, how, many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nání, ba-</td>
<td>who, which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nînî, ba-</td>
<td>what, which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monîngâ, ml-</td>
<td>friend, companion, colleague, peer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nô, -nôko</td>
<td>to rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nokî</td>
<td>fast, quick, prompt, early</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

274
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-nökisa</td>
<td>to make/cause to rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nökø</td>
<td>(See -nø)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nökø, ba-</td>
<td>uncle, mother's brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mongokø, m1-</td>
<td>mouth, opening; word, message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binú</td>
<td>you (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linu, lino, ma-</td>
<td>tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeró (numéro)</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>to, toward, at, in, on, by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>oh!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>óó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otobisí (autobus)</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limpa, ma-</td>
<td>bread, piece of bread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mopagánó, ba-</td>
<td>pagan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>epái, b1-</td>
<td>side, part, direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpákú, mpáko, n1-</td>
<td>tax; corvee labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palákí (plaque)</td>
<td>plate, plaque; auto licence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palató, ba-</td>
<td>errand boy, messenger postman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-palola</td>
<td>to skin, peel, scrape (off), scour (off)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpamba, m-</td>
<td>free, worthless, only, vain, without reason; nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lopango, m-</td>
<td>enclosure, fence; plot of land; place of residence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

275
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINGALA</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-papola</td>
<td>to make thinner, shave off, remove an excess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Parlementaire', ba-</td>
<td>member of Parliament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpási, m-</td>
<td>pain, suffering illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pasola</td>
<td>to tear (off), cleave, split (off), saw, clear (away)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pastélé (pasteur)</td>
<td>minister, clergyman (Protestant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pasuka</td>
<td>to be worn out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-paswa</td>
<td>to be split, torn; explode, split suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpatá, m-</td>
<td>sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpáta, m-</td>
<td>five-franc piece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pataló (pantalon)</td>
<td>trousers, pants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpáu, mpáo, m-</td>
<td>shovel, spade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mopaya, ba-</td>
<td>stranger; guest, visitor; host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpé</td>
<td>and, also, even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mópe, mónpe, ba- (mon père)</td>
<td>priest (Catholic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pela</td>
<td>to be on fire, burn, be hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpela, m-</td>
<td>rain; rainy season; flood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pelisa</td>
<td>to kindle, light; sharpen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpéma, m-</td>
<td>breath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpémbé</td>
<td>chalk, white; ivory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpembéní, m-</td>
<td>side, edge; around, near, beside, along, next to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pénépéné</td>
<td>near, close, by against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpenzá, m-</td>
<td>only, alone, really, truly, completely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

276
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mopẹpe, m1-</td>
<td>wind, air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pésa</td>
<td>to give, provide with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pésana</td>
<td>to give to each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lopété, m-</td>
<td>ring; stripe, braid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mompíla, m1-</td>
<td>undershirt, tee shirt, vest, sweater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pilipíli</td>
<td>red pepper, pimento</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpió, m-</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piósí (ploche)</td>
<td>pick, pickaxe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pitqlo (petrole)</td>
<td>kerosene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpó</td>
<td>thing, matter, affair; because, on account of why</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpó na níní</td>
<td>afternoon, (until 6 p.m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpókwa, m-</td>
<td>policeman, police</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polísí (police)</td>
<td>to be(come) wet/soggy/rotten; be beaten, defeated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-polo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pómpi</td>
<td>pump, spray; filling station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpóndú</td>
<td>manioc leaves (used as a vegetable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpóngí, m-</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pono, pona</td>
<td>to choose, select, elect, prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpósá, m-</td>
<td>urge, desire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pósi (poche)</td>
<td>pocket, pouch, sack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pósiita (poste)</td>
<td>post office, post service, mail box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpósó, m-</td>
<td>week; ration; Saturday; weekend, salary, pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'président'</td>
<td>president</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'prise'</td>
<td>plug (electrical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'pull-over'</td>
<td>sweater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pupa</td>
<td>to blow, fan, window; shake; clean by blowing/shaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pupola, pupola</td>
<td>to blow/shake/clean off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pusa</td>
<td>to surpass, exceed, be very, be too much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-púsa</td>
<td>to push, shove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>púsupúsu (pousse-pousse)</td>
<td>push cart; baby carriage, stroller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipúta, ma-</td>
<td>pagne, long wrap-around skirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putulú</td>
<td>cinders, ashes, dust, powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rádio, radió</td>
<td>radio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sabóni (savon)</td>
<td>soap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosal, monsal, mosapl, m1-, n-</td>
<td>finger, toe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sakana</td>
<td>to pay, enjoy oneself, have a good time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sála</td>
<td>to do, work, perform, make, till the ground, farm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lisálá, ma-</td>
<td>field, cultivation; vegetable dish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### BASIC COURSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word (Initials)</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mosálá, mi-</td>
<td>job, work, trade, occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sálama</td>
<td>to be done/made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sálamaka</td>
<td>to be done/made habitually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esálalí, bi-</td>
<td>tool, instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mísálele</td>
<td>to make/do for oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosálele, ba-</td>
<td>servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esálelo, bi-</td>
<td>workshop, workroom, place to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosálí, ba-</td>
<td>worker, employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sálísa</td>
<td>to help, take care of; employ, instruct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sálíssana</td>
<td>to help each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lísálíss1, bosálíss1, ma-</td>
<td>help, aid, assistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosálíss1, ba-</td>
<td>assistant, helper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sämpa</td>
<td>to plead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esámpa, bi-</td>
<td>prayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sämpela</td>
<td>to plead for someone; pray; perform/conduct religious services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nsambo</td>
<td>seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sana, -sakona</td>
<td>to play, amuse oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sanga</td>
<td>to assemble, meet; mix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandúku, (ba-)</td>
<td>trunk, box, suitcase, chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masanga</td>
<td>wine, beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nsango, n-</td>
<td>news, report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sání, ba-</td>
<td>dish, bowl, plate, basin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosání, ba-</td>
<td>player</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala Term</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lìsano, lìsanu, ma-</td>
<td>game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sánzá</td>
<td>month, moon; salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapáto, sapáta</td>
<td>shoe(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misátu, misáto</td>
<td>finger, toe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sciences économiques</td>
<td>economics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se, te</td>
<td>that... (introduces subordinate clause)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nsé, n-</td>
<td>earth, world; bottom; down under, beneath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-seba</td>
<td>to sharpen, file, whet; draw palm wine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'secrétaire'</td>
<td>secretary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sémba</td>
<td>right, just, honest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-semba</td>
<td>to extend, be right/upright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sembola</td>
<td>to put right, straighten up, make vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sembwa</td>
<td>to be right, just, sincere; be in an upright position, be straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-síngge, -síngga</td>
<td>to ask for, beg; order (merchandise)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sika, sikáwa</td>
<td>now, just now, recently, immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esiká, bi-</td>
<td>place; where; when, while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosíká, mi-</td>
<td>distance; distant, remote, far off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>masínì1</strong> (machine)</td>
<td>machine, mechanical instrument; train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nyόnso, bάnso</strong></td>
<td>all, every, each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lίso, òmίso</strong> (see lίsu)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sodá, ba-</strong> (soldat)</td>
<td>soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>soféle, ba-</strong> (chauffeur)</td>
<td>driver, chauffeur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sόkó, sόkí</strong></td>
<td>if, whether, about, perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sokolá</strong> (chocolat)</td>
<td>brown, dark red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sokoto</strong></td>
<td>uniform, military jacket/clothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-solola</strong></td>
<td>to talk, converse, speak,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sόcoló</strong></td>
<td>true, real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mosόlo, mί-</strong></td>
<td>money, wealth; dowry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-sόmba</strong></td>
<td>to buy, purchase, procure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala Word</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sómbama</td>
<td>to be purchased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sómbela</td>
<td>to sell to someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-misómbela</td>
<td>to buy for oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosómbi, ba-</td>
<td>purchaser, buyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosoní, ba-</td>
<td>seamstress, tailor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sóngo</td>
<td>to sew, make clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sopa</td>
<td>to pour, spill, overturn, spread; talk nonsense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soséti (chausette)</td>
<td>sock, stocking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nsósó, n-</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bíșú</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lisu, liso, °misu, °miso</td>
<td>eye; (in pl.) with eyes open, with good vision/taste; unafraid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nsúka, n-</td>
<td>the end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nsúka ya mpósó</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-súka</td>
<td>to end, finish; separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sukáli (sucre)</td>
<td>sugar; candy; sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosúki, n-</td>
<td>hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sukola</td>
<td>to wash, clean, launder; to speak frankly to someone, tell someone off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-misukola</td>
<td>to bathe, take a bath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sukolela</td>
<td>to wash/clean for someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sukolelisa</td>
<td>to have something washed/cleaned for someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sukwama</td>
<td>to be/have been washed, mopped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sumé (essuie-main) towel, wash cloth
lisúsu again, besides, else, moreover, yet
    lisúsu té no more, no longer
mosúsu, m-
other, others, else
na ntángu mosúsu occasionally, sometimes
sutánì (soutane) cloth (clergy), cassock
masúwa, maswá boat, ship
-swáa to bite, sting
misión (mission) mission, missionary, clergyman (Protestant)

ntaba, n-
goat
etabe, b-
banana
matabísí (matabiche) matabiche, something extra
given as an incentive to buy; tip, gratuity, advantage, profit

taksí (taxi) taxicab
-tála to look, look at, visit
talasé (terrasse) ditch, canal
talatála mirror, pane of glass; spectacles, lamp chimney
botálí, (ma-) view; viewing; contemplation
motálí, m-
spectator, observer
-tálisa to demonstrate, show
litálíslí, ma-
show, demonstration, display
taliyé, talyé (atelier)  workshop, shop, workroom
ntálu, ntálo, n-
litambála, kitambála, ma-
támbola  price, number
-handkerchief, cloth, towel, napkin
-támbolatambola  to take a walk, travel, move, make progress, hurry
-tambwisa  to walk a lot, a long way; wander
motámbwís₁, ba-
motábwís₁ ya mótnuka  to put in motion, start, drive (a car)
one who sets in motion, one who spreads, steersman
driver, chauffeur
-motábwís₁ ya mótnuka
-tanda  to spread, stretch out
motáné  bright red/orange/yellow
motánésó  light yellow/tan/beige
-tánga  to read, count, enumerate, add up
time, hour; clock; sun
ntángu, ntángo, n-
mítáno, mítánu  five
tási (tasse)  cup
né ya tási  saucer
tatá, ba-
matánga  father
matánga, mourning, reception
held at end of mourning and certain other special occasions
time, hour; sun; clock
not, no
te //ˈte//
téé, tíí
motéï, motéïy, mi-
téka
motéléki, ba-
motélékinyama, ba-
tékisa
téléfón (telephone)
-télempé
ntembe, n-
témbele (timbre)
eténi, bi-
téyä
litéya, ma-
etéyelo, bi-
motéyï, motéï, mi-
'thêrhomètre'
tíí
tíí, téé
-tiela, -tîyela, -tíla
-tîka
that, so that, in order that
until
teacher, instructor
to sell; betray; damage another's reputation
seller, trader
meatseller, butcher
to cause to sell; resell at a profit
telephone
to stop, stand up; insist
discussion, argument; doubt, suspicion, hesitation
postage-stamp
piece, part, share, room
to teach, instruct
lesson
school
teacher, instructor
thermometer
tea
until, up to; (for) a long time, without interruption
to put for, put in for, pour for
to leave, abandon, renounce, forsake, abstain from, cease; leave behind; deliver; let, permit
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINGALA</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-tókala</td>
<td>to stay, remain, stay behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>botíkí, (ma-)</td>
<td>resignation, abdication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tíma</td>
<td>to dig, spade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tímola</td>
<td>to dig up, spade over, turn over the soil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntína, n-</td>
<td>root; basis, meaning, reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cause, significance, principle; because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntína na, ntína ya</td>
<td>because of, on account of, therefore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tínda</td>
<td>to order, command; send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tíndama</td>
<td>to be sent, shipped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tíndela</td>
<td>to send someone, order someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>litíti, ma-</td>
<td>blade of grass; hair, sheet of paper; weed, plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tíya</td>
<td>to put (in/on), set pour in place, load (up/on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tíyana</td>
<td>to put up with each other,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to discuss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tíyana ntembe</td>
<td>to discuss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tíyela, -tiela</td>
<td>to put for, put in for, pour for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tıyó (tuyau)</td>
<td>pipe, tube, hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moto (See motu)</td>
<td>head; bunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motó, mutú, motú, mi-</td>
<td>fire, heat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>móto</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toó</td>
<td>six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motóbá</td>
<td>to pierce, puncture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

286
-tóka to draw water; dig out/up
-tókìsa to boil, be boiling, cause to boil
-tóko to boil, be boiling
tomáto to mato
-tómbara to pick up, lift, carry
-tónda to be(come) full/filled; fill
-tóndisa to fill
-tóndo to wish, hope, thank
tonga to bind, tie, join; twist, braid, plaît; weave, sew; expand, enlarge
-tónega to build
-tóngama to be built, be finished
motóngi, ba- builder, contractor, mason
tóngisa to have built, cause to be built
ntóngó, n-memory, after- morning, afternoon
motu, moto, ba-
mutú (See motú) person, human, man
mótuka, mi-
litúká, ma-
automobile, truck, motor car
three stones used to cook on; cook stove
ntúká, n-
-tumba to burn, set fire to, fry, roast over/in a fire
etumba, bi-
war, fight, battle, conflict
-tumbama to be burned, fired
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINGALA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-túna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mitúna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motúna, m1-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-túnama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitúnga, litúnga, ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>litungúlu, ma-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-túta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motúya, m1-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-úmela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-umelaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'université'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-úta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>útá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ville'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vinu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>víza (visa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'voiture'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'voter'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áwa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
mwa
of, belonging

wáná, wáaná
there, that, by/near you

wápi
where; (emphatic negative) not at all, nothing at all, not whether

wólo
gold

ya
of, belonging to

-yáa
to come, come to be, become

-nyákola
to scratch, mark

nyama, n-
animal, meat

monyámá, ml-
net

-yángela
to manage, administrate, arrange

moyángeli, ba-
manager, director, administrator

yé, yeé
he, she, him, her, his, hers

boye
so, thus

-yéba
to know, know how to, be acquainted with; may, be allowed to

-yébana
to become known

-yébisa
to advise, inform, make known

liyébisa, ma-
notice, indication

-ýékola
to study, learn

moyékoli, ba-
student

-ýékvisa
to teach, instruct

moyékwisi, ba-
teacher, instructor
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINGALA</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mayéle</td>
<td>intelligence, understanding, intellect, mind; shyness, craftiness, manner, means</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yémba</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loyémbó, n-</td>
<td>song, singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moyémbo1, ba-</td>
<td>singer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eyenga, bi-</td>
<td>festival, feast day; Sunday, week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yíba</td>
<td>to steal, take away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moyíbi1, ba-</td>
<td>thief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yíbiisa</td>
<td>to cause to steal, cause to be stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yínda</td>
<td>to become dark/black/dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-miyíbiisa</td>
<td>to cause to be one's possession, to be stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yó, yoo</td>
<td>you (sg.), your, yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>óyo</td>
<td>this, these, the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yóka</td>
<td>to hear, listen; feel; understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yókama</td>
<td>to be heard (by someone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yókana</td>
<td>to hear (from) one another, understand each other, agree, live on good terms with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nyókolo</td>
<td>to mistreat, torture, annoy, oppress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monyókoli1, ba-</td>
<td>torturer, tyrant, slavedriver; weariness, bother, trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nyongo, n-</td>
<td>debt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-zala
  -zala na
  -zala ya

nzala, n-

eزال، bi-
bozali، (ma-)

ندَنْغَة يَا بَوْزَالِی

زَمْبا، ئْمْمَبَا

نْزَامْبِی

Zámba, emamba

Nzámbe

God

zándu، zándo

-zánga

linzanza، ma-

Metal box، tin car؛ sheet of metal

nzélá

See nzilá

zélo

sand

nzémbo، n-

song، singing

-zénga

to cut off، chop off

nzeté، n-

tree، stick، piece of wood، handle

nzilá، nzélá، n-

road، way، path، passage؛ admittance، permission؛ opening؛ means

-zíla

to wait، wait for

-zínda

to sink؛ drown، flood، go under water

291
-zoka to be injured, be touched
-zokîsa to injure, wound
-mîzokîsa to injure/wound oneself
nzoku, n-
zómi elephant
ten
-zónga to return, go/come back
-zóngîsa to send/give back; answer
nzétu, nzóto, n-
zulunálo (journal) newspaper, magazine
zúzi, zúze (juge) judge, court, tribunal
-zwá to get, receive, find, meet
-zwáma to be taken, received, found

PROPER NAMES

Alobé (Albert) Albert
'Amerlcaîn' American
'Amerlque' America
Andelé (André) Andrew
'Antoîne' Antoine
Áugusti (aoûtï) August
Binza Binza, the (former) European section of Leopoldville
Brazzaville the city of Brazzaville
California California
CEGEAC C.E.G.E.A.C., a new-car dealer that imports American-made cars
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINGALA</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coq</td>
<td>the city of Coquilhatville</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desembe (decembre)</td>
<td>December</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fevlié (février)</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimwënza</td>
<td>Kimwënsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinsásá</td>
<td>Leopoldville; the original settlement, now only a part of Leopoldville</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kisangani</td>
<td>the city of Stanleyville</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kongó</td>
<td>Congo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leó</td>
<td>the city of Leopoldville</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mái (mai)</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malasí (mars)</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marénsa</td>
<td>the city of Marensa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matádí</td>
<td>the city of Matadi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Michel'</td>
<td>Michel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mónika (Monique)</td>
<td>Monique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stanley</td>
<td>Sir Henry Morton Stanley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Novémbe (novembre)</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okotóbe (octobre)</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Pierre'</td>
<td>Pierre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pólo (Paul)</td>
<td>Paul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpótó, Mputú (Portugal)</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setémbe, Setémbele (septembre)</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yúl1 (juillet)</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yún1 (juin)</td>
<td>June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zavié (janvier)</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zóla, Zolá</td>
<td>Zola (proper name)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>